Lord
Preserve thy Country and thy King

Lord
Preserve thy Country and thy King

A

NEVV SURVEY
OF THE
Turkish Empire
HISTORY
AND
GOVERNMENT
COMPLEATED.

Being an exact and absolute Discovery of what is worthy of Knowledge, or any way satisfactory to Curiosity in that mighty Nation.

With several Brass Pieces, lively expressing the most eminent Personages concerned in this Subject.

By R. Marsh.

Nec sinas Turcos *equitare inultos*
Te Duce Cæsar.
Horat. Od. 2.

London, Printed by *J. Best.* for *John Williams*, at the sign of the Crown in St. *Pauls* Church-yard, MDCLXIV.

Ott. 3106.64

Harvard College Library,
Gift of
Joseph Randolph Coolidge.
1 June, 1899.

TO THE READER.

THIS Rationale *or Account of the* Turkiſh Empire, *like the Subject it treats of, from diſperſed and ſcattered pieces of Travel and Obſervation, is now arrived to a compleat Conſiſtency in this entire Frame and Compoſure, and looks like the Portraicture and becoming proportionate Reſemblance of that moſt noble and potent* STATE.

And perhaps this Work and Endeavour was due and reſerved to this juncture of its Greatneſs, as wherein the power and force of this Monarch doth ſo preſſingly and importunately urge our conſideration and ſerious reflections upon the Effects thereof; And as he draws nearer to us, ſo in reaſon he ſhould appear in larger and fuller Dimenſions, then the dangerleſs apprehenſions of

former times have measured him out to our Curiosity.

It is confest, that the joynt stock of those famed Writers, who have engaged in this design, will ne're tantamount *to the sum of this Treatise, (wherein are some things notwithstanding altogether rare and novel) but such is the disjayned, unreduced variety thereof, besides the brevity and incompetence, as to particulars, unless all of them be consulted, that never any plenary satisfaction was yet given the world: As therefore in the* Politicks, *Dominions that lye compact and united to one another, though smaller, are preferred to richer and vaster Territories, which are eloigned & far distanced, for that the former can presently succour and relieve its fellows (as in the case of* France *and* Spain;) *by so much may this Essay presume of a Favourable Reception; and for that the one part doth now illustrate and set forth the other, and each supplies the whole, with every thing requisite in this* Government, *by an easie and direct methodical conveyance, quite different from the projection of the former Draught, for the better cluing and manuduction of the Reader.*

And this being the first adventure this way, we have further Reason to hope, that the ingenious will readily approve it, considering in this busie world what use there is to be made of Time, *and how much labour and purveyance is saved in revolving so many Authors, as inquisitive men, resolved upon the pursuit of this story, must otherwise have recourse to.*

It was said ingeniously by Martial *upon the* Discomfitures *of* Pompey *in so many places and different Countries:*

——————————Jacere
Uno non potuit tanta ruina loco.

And I may more fitly say of the Glories of this Monarchy,

——————————Jacere
Debuit haud multis Gloria tanta locis.

As it is thus reassembled from its divided pieces, in the manner of a resurrection, we trust it hath put on perfection, and with that immortality; that is to say, as long as the Turkish Name and Nation shall endure.

VALE.

H. M.

VALE

The CONTENTS.

Chap. I.

THe Life of *Mahomet* the Impostor and Founder of this Empire.

Chap. II.

An epitomy of the lives of His Successors the Caliphs, Sultans and Emperors of the *Ottoman* Familie.

Chap. III.

The Extent of their Dominion.

Chap. IV.

Their Militia.

Chap. V.

Their Government Civil and Ecclesiastical

Chap. VI.

Their Religion.

Chap. VII.

The *Seraglio* or Court of the *Grand Seignior.*

Chap. VIII.

The common Customs and Manner of the *Turks:*

Chap.

Chap. IX.

Of the afflictions of Captives and Christians under the *Turks*.

Chap. X.

A Dispute between a *Roman Catholick* and a *Turk*, with several Propheſies concerning the *Turks*.

Chap. XI.

A brief view of the *Tartars*.

Chap. XII.

The Character of *Tamerlane* and *Scanderbeg* thoſe two great terrors to the *Turk*

Chap. XIII.

The modern Hiſtory of the *Turks*, with the ſiege of *Newhauſel*.

Chap. XIV.

The late expedition of the noble General Count *Serini*.

Chap. XV.

The intereſt of all the Princes in Chriſtendom upon the account of Policy and Religion in a War with the *Turks*.

Chap. XVI.

An exact Chronology of the ſucceſſes of the Chriſtians formerly obtained againſt them.

A NEVV SVRVEY OF THE Turkish Empire COMPLEATED.

CHAP. I.

Of the Life of Mahomet *the Impoſtor and Founder of this Empire, with the ſucceeding Calyphs.*

LIttle reaſon hath the world to admire at the impiety of men, how execrable ſoever, when it ſhall be fully informed of the moſt blaſphemous deſigns of this vile and lewd Deceiver, who by his proſperous and thriving deluſions and abominations, hath given encouragement to ſucceeding and very modern times to practice and imitate his wicked ex-

ample. Such a Miſcellany of abſurdities in moral and religious concernments could indeed hardly have been imagined to have found any reception among rational creatures; but ſuch was the force of his bold Atheiſm, and his boaſted familiarity with the Deity, and the pleaſing inſinuations of his ſenſual and material Paradiſe, how incongruouſly ſoever confounded in his Inſtitutions, beſides the fine novelty thereof to a Pagan people, that without very much ado this Impoſtor quickly planted his opinions ſo ſtrong, that they have taken ſuch root and ſpread ſo univerſally, that one whole half of the habitable world to this day adheres to his doctrine.

Mahomets extraction

Moſt Writers accord that *Mahomet*, which name in the *Arabick* ſignifies *Indignation* or *Fury*, was the ſon of *Adalla* a Merchant in *Mecca*, a City in *Arabia Fælix*; but *Jathrib* an obſcure Village there, is named for his extraction. His mother *Hemina* a Jew, and himſelf in *Anno Dom.* 571. born *Poſthumus*, though others ſay he was deprived of both his Parents at two years old, when a poor woman that laboured for her living bred him up; others ſay it was his Uncle; at ſixteen years of age he became a Merchants Bond-man, his name *Abdalmutalif*; his Maſter pleaſed with his wit and dexterity, made him his Factor: He dead, *Mahomet* being then twenty five years old, married his Miſtris, and until the thirty eighth year of his age he induſtriouſly followed his trade of merchandize, avoiding no perſonal travel (as well in the Kingdoms of *Egypt*, *Syria* and *Perſia*, as elſewhere) where

where profit might ariſe. Being then ſatisfied with wealth, and given to eaſe, he began to think on higher things, whereof in his travels he had not been negligent, having been curious to underſtand the Religion of the Jews and Chriſtians; which compared with the Idolatry wherein he was originally trained thirty years, did work in him aſſurance that Paganiſm was the way of ignorance, but to whether of thoſe to incline, he ſtood doubtful. At laſt falling in company with two Chriſtian Artificers inhabitants in *Mecca*, by converſation with them (who read the Old and New Teſtament unto him, for himſelf was unlettered) he preferred Chriſtianiſm, and ſeemed of opinion, that thereby only a man might attain unto ſalvation, and accordingly he framed his life, which bred admiration in them that knew him, and gave him a greater reputation then he did expect.

But this haſty ſpring was quickly blaſted; for the Devil taking advantage by this his eſteem, enflamed his heart with pride, which wrought in him a deſire to be taken for a Prophet, thinking all other attributes of Religion and ſanctity to be but vile and baſe: To aſpire unto that opinion he embraced a ſolitary life, retiring to a Cave in the Mountains, where he lived free from the ordinary converſation of men; repaired ſeldom to his own home, and his ſpeeches (mixt with gravity and holineſs, teaching good life, and beating down Idolatry) moved, not onely ſuch as ſaw him to admire, but the reſt alſo (that heard by other mens ears) held him to be a

Mahomet aſpires to the name of a Prophet.

Saint. To increase this opinion of sanctimony, of the falling sickness (wherewith he was afflicted) he made good use; for he gave it out (when he fell into his fits incident to that disease) that he conferred with the Angel *Gabriel*, by whom the pleasure of God was revealed unto him, and that his trance proceeded through the weakness of his earthly Carcase, that was astonished at the Divine presence of the Heavenly Ambassadour. To pass by the vulgar story of his pedigree.

Mahomet troubled with the Falling sickness.

Grown now famous, he thought it necessary to divulge into the world some works in writing, whereby his name might encrease; His best help was a Jew Scribe, whom for want of a better Scholar he entertained; but shortly after, his Master the Devil (the Church of Christ then labouring with the sickness of many Heresies) procured the acquaintance of a Christian called *Sergius* born in *Alexandria*, by profession a Monk, and by infection a Nestorian, witty, eloquent and learned, who (having mist of some Ecclesiastical preferment which in his opinion he had deserved) full of despight and revenge, in a devillish discontent, (having fled out of *Syria* into the house of *Mahomets* Master) sought as well to raise a scandal upon the Christian Religion, as upon the professors thereof; the readiest way to kindle this fire, he found to be *Mahomet*; who (as is already said) had won some extraordinary opinion of sanctity. After some conference between them, the Jew for insufficiency was discharged. *Sergius* being fully informed

The *Monk Sergius* his Coadjutor

formed how *Mahomet* had hitherto proceeded, made him to understand how weakly and grosly he had erred in fundamental points necessary for the advancement of a new Religion; and cunningly shewed him, not only the means how to smooth his past errors without scandal, but to compose a new Treatise, collected out of the Old and New Testament, united into some common principles with devised additions of his own, to bring Christians, Jews, and Gentiles under one profession, that should give credit to his Doctrine, and humour the hearers; which being divulged amongst the Idolatrous people (who were easily caught) spread the poyson it contained over all the *Arabies*; but the wiser sort fearing (as they had cause) that the setling of a new Religion, might also draw with it a new form of Government, opposed themselves against it, calling *Mahomet* an Impostor, reproving his hypocrisie, and taxing his sensuality and drunkenness (of both which he was guilty) and sent to apprehend him; whereof *Mahomet* from some of his friends in *Mecca* having notice, left his Cave and fled to the Desarts; *Sergius* in the mean time sounding in the ears of the people his parts and piety (the sixteenth of *July* 622. from which flight the Turks begin their computation of *Hegyrathi*) unto whom divers Novelists resorted; as also such as the Estates had banished for approving his late coyned trash: This swarm of Wasps being stirred, nothing but revenge could ease their hearts; *Mahomet* willingly taking the advantage there offered, enlarged

His damnable advice.

The *Hegyra*.

larged his thoughts, holding it now, leſs difficil for him to gain a Kingdom, then the title of a Prophet, which he had obtained.

To make a ſmooth way to his enterprize, by under-hand means, he exaſperated the heady Noveliſts (whereof there were many of wealth and eſtimation) to be ſenſible of their baniſhment, and to repair their wrongs by force; himſelf accounted unto them Revelations, which aſſured him that God was diſpleaſed with the *Meccans*, for the rigorous proſecuting him and his Sectaries; that God willed to chaſtiſe their Tyranny: of victory he was aſſured: and whoſoever of them dyed in that holy War, his ſoul ſhould preſently aſcend to Heaven: with theſe and ſuch like motives, the giddy people encouraged and ſeduced, elected *Mahomet* to be their chief, who (ordaining Officers and Captains, and receiving an Oath of fidelity as well from them as from their troops) marched to the City of *Medina*, and though repulſed at firſt, (yet after a field fight with the ſaid enemy, at a place called *Bedex*, often mentioned in the *Alcoran*, where he had the Victory) took it by force, the cauſe of his quarrel being pretended againſt the Jews Synagogue, which he converted into a Temple for his own abominations: This firſt good fortune wrought the effect he deſired; for inſtantly by his Army he was ſaluted Calipha, which interpreted, is King; and becauſe his creation happened upon a Friday, that day was ordained by him to be their Sabboth.

Mahomet takes Medina.

His next conqueſt was the City of *Mecca*, where he

Takes Mecca.

he triumphed in the blood of his Neighbour Citizens, which was not ſpared; and proclaimed death to all thoſe that did not embrace his Doctrine.

The Princes and great men in *Arabia* (oppoſite unto him) aſſembled all their forces; *Mahomet* being too weak, was overthrown, wounded, and fled to *Mecca*; yet in the end (the war continuing) he prevailed, and reduced the three *Arabies* under his ſubjection. Grown great and glorious with his Victories, (at that time the Emperor of *Conſtantinople*, and King of *Perſia* being men of weak and tame Spirits,) and aſſiſted with the *Saracens*, who had been deceived and abuſed of their pay by *Heraclius* the Emperor, as alſo by *Julian* the Apoſtate, (for *Mahomets* appearance was ſignalized with the contemporary raign of that miſcreant) he invaded their Dominions, and with a conquering ſword triumphed over *Syria*, the City of *Jeruſalem*, the Kingdom of *Meſopotamia* and *Perſia*, the great City of *Babylon*, with other Eaſtern Provinces; of all which, as of the *Arabies*, he ſtiled himſelf King. Being now grown elder by his inordinate life, in the ſtate of his body then in years, which exceeded not ſixty ſeven, full of glory, as well in regard of his large Empire, as in opinion of ſanctity in being eſteemed a Prophet, and weary with war, with a fained holineſs, he retired to *Mecca*, the Metropolis of his new Empire (under which maſk he intended to take his eaſe) ſequeſtred himſelf from publique affairs, committing the Government of his eſtate to the Lieute-

Oppoſed by the Nobles of *Arabia*.

His conqueſts.

And retirement.

Lieutenants, and within three years following, which was in *Anno Dom.* 631. the ſixtieth year of his Age, and the tenth of his reign he died; but others ſay in the ſeventieth of his age, and the twenty third of his impoſtures, and that he died frantick: Upon his death-bed he commended unto his principal Commanders, the care and uſe of his fantaſtical Law, aſſuring them that it was agreeable to the Will of God, and that ſo long as they and their poſterity ſhould hold and maintain it, they ſhould flouriſh. His dead body being kept four dayes in expectation of a reſurrection, which he promiſed to perform in three, grown full of ſtench and putrefaction, was carried by his ſucceſſors, who pretended to be his Caliphs or Vicar Generals, to *Medina*, where it yet continues, but not drawn up to the roof of the Chappel by a Load-ſtone, as is vulgarly fabled.

Mahomet dies.

This falſe Prophet and uſurping Prince, pretended paternally to diſcend from the Patriarch *Abraham* by his eldeſt Son *Iſmael*, and to avoid the infamy of an unlawful bed, he affirmed that *Iſmael* was the Son of *Sara*, not of the Bond-woman *Agar*, whereupon the *Arabians* (which is the undoubted name of that people) are by ſome writers (of *Iſmael*) called *Iſmaelites*, and by others (of *Agar*) *Agarens*; And (of *Sara*) *Sarazens*, but in this latter time they are diſtinguiſhed by the name of *Arabians*, *Moors*, and *Mahometans*; the firſt is proper only to thoſe which inhabit in *Arabia*: the *Moors* are the Progeny of ſuch *Arabians* as after their Con-

Mahomet pretends diſcent from *Abraham*.

queſts

queſts ſeated themſelves in that part of *Africa*: the *Mahometans* is the general name of all Nations that profeſs *Mahomet*, as *Turks*, *Tartars*, *Perſians*, &c.

Of the ſucceſſors of *Mahomet* until the year of our Lord 673. the writers vary in opinion, both in name and number of the Caliphs, and in the years of their reigns: the reaſon that begat their errors proceeded from the diſſention that happened (about the ſucceſſion) amongſt *Mahomets* Kinſ-men, evermore Anti-Caliphs ſtarting up with pretending Titles in oppoſition to him that had the Diadem; whereof ſome were murthered and others depoſed, ſo as the writers either out of ignorance (not able to diſcern the truth, or wilfully partial) have erred. Notwithſtanding their civil tumults they kept *Mahomets* Dominions, and inherited his fortunes, for every of them added ſomewhat to his Monarchy, whereby they became fearful to the world, and potent in *Aſia*, *Africa*, and *Europe*.

The fourth Caliph (agreed upon by Hiſtoriographers) was called *Aozman* or *Azman*, Husband to *Mahomets* Daughter, who perceiving (that in this upſtart Religion) Schiſms and diverſities of opinions began to riſe, by the help of his Wifes Mother recovered *Mahomets* papers wherein his Law was written, which with ſome additions of his own he cauſed to be digeſted into one volume, containing four books, divided into 124. Chapters, and called it the *Alcoran*; that is to ſay, the *Colleſtion of Precepts*:

the Original whereof they feign to be written in a Table which is kept in heaven, and the Copy of it brought to *Mahomet* by the Angel *Gabriel*, by his miſtake, ſay the *Perſians*, but for *Mahomets* vertue, approved by God.

The eſteem of the Alcoran.

A Book ſo highly reverenced by the *Mahometans*, that they write upon the Cover of it, *Let none touch this but he that is clean*; Commanding expreſly upon pain of death, that that book, and that only, ſhould be received as *Canonical*, through his Dominions. The whole body of it is but an Expoſition and gloſs on theſe eight Commandements.

1. *Every one ought to believe that God is a great God, and one only God, and* Mahomet *is his Prophet.* They hold *Abraham* to be the Friend of God; *Moſes* the Meſſenger of God; and *Chriſt* the Breath of God, whom they deny to be conceived by the Holy Ghoſt, affirming that the Virgin *Mary* grew with child of him by ſmelling to a Roſe, and was delivered of him at her breaſts. They deny the myſtery of the Trinity, but puniſh ſuch as ſpeak againſt *Chriſt*; whoſe Religion was not (ſay they) taken away, but mended by *Mahomet*. And he who in his pilgrimage to *Mecca*, doth not coming or going, viſit the Sepulchre of *Chriſt*, is reputed not to have *merited*, or bettered himſelf any thing by his journey.

Their opinion concerning *Chriſt*.

2. *Every man muſt marry to increaſe the Sectaries of Mahomet.* Four Wives he allowed to every man, and as many Concubines as he will, between whom the Husband ſetteth no difference, either

either in affection or apparel, but that his Wives only can enjoy his *Sabbaths* benevolence. The women are not admitted in the time of their lives to come into their Churches; nor after death to Paradiſe.

3. *Every one muſt give of his wealth to the poor.* Hence you ſhall have ſome buy ſlaves, and then manumit them; buy birds and then let them flie. They uſe commonly to free Priſoners, releaſe Bond-ſlaves, build caves or lodgings in the wayes for the relief of Paſſengers, repair bridges, and mend High-ways.

4. *Every one muſt make his prayers five times a day.* When they pray they turn their bodies toward *Mecca*, but their faces ſometimes one way, ſometimes another way, believing that *Mahomet* ſhall come behind them, being at their devotions. And thoſe which cannot come, muſt when they hear the voice of the Cryars, fall down in the place where they are, do their devotions, and kiſs the ground thrice.

5. *Every man muſt keep a Lent one month in a year.* This Lent is called *Ramazan*, in which they ſuppoſe the *Alcoran* was given unto *Mahomet* by the Angel *Gabriel*. This faſt is onely intended in the day time, the law giving leave to frolick it in the night, as they beſt pleaſe, ſo they abſtain from Wine and Swines fleſh.

6. *Be obedient to thy Parents.* Which Law is the moſt neglected of any in all the *Alcoran*: never any children being ſo unnatural as the Turkiſh. *Turks* unnatural to their parents.

7. *Thou ſhalt not kill.* And this they keep inviolated among themſelves, but the poor Chri-

ſtians are ſure to feel the ſmart of their fury. And as if by this law the actual ſhedding of blood onely were prohibited, they have invented puniſhment for their offenders, worſe then death it ſelf.

8. *Do unto others, as thou would be done unto thy ſelf.* To thoſe that keep theſe Laws he promiſeth Paradiſe, a place of all delights, adorned with flowery fields, watered with Chryſtalline Rivers, beautified with trees of Gold; under whoſe cool ſhade they ſhall ſpend their time with amorous Virgins, whoſe manſion ſhall not be far diſtant. The men ſhall never exceed the age of thirty, nor the women of fifteen; and thoſe to have their virginities renewed as faſt as loſt. He taught too, that at the end of the world, all men that profeſſed any ſuch Religion, ſhould go into Paradiſe; the *Jews* under the Banner of *Moſes*; the *Chriſtians* under the Banner of *Chriſt*; and the *Saracens* under the Banner of *Mahomet*. They compel no man therefore to abjure the faith in which he was born, but commend and approve ſecretly ſuch as they find zealous and conſtant in their own Religion; yea hold it an eſpecial honour to have daily new Proſelytes, they incite them by hope of freedom and preferment, which with many are motives too much prevailing.

The *Turks* Paradiſe.

The opinions which they hold concerning the end of the world, are very ridiculous; as that at the winding of a horn, not all fleſh only but the Angels themſelves ſhall die, that the earth with an Earth-quake ſhall be kneeded to-

Their abſurd conceit of doomſday.

gether

gether like a lump of Dough; that a second blaſt of the ſame horn ſhall after forty dayes reſtore all again; that *Cain* ſhall be Captain or Ring-leader of the damned, who ſhall have the countenance of Dogs and ſwine; that they ſhall paſs over the bridge of Juſtice, laden with their ſins in ſatchels; that the great ſinners ſhall fall into Hell, the leſſer into Purgatory onely; with a thouſand of the like fopperies, which it is needleſs to add here, conſidering that the *Alcoran* it ſelf is now extent in Engliſh, and every one that liſts may read it.

I need not engage further in an account of his Doctrine, and pretended ſucceſſors. But having ſhown you the Original and Author of this Dominion, and how gained, and by what art enlarged into that bulk, and by force wreſted from other Princes, (*Mahomet* pretending for his injurious invaſions, the directions of God, who ſeeing his Law delivered by *Moſes* and *Chriſt* to have been deſpiſed, becauſe of the weak aſſertion thereof, would have them planted now by the Sword) we will next ſee by what means they are yet kept and maintained, and are like to be increaſed, namely by power, and the ſame military Maximes. *Imperium iiſdem Artibus facile retinetur quibus acquiritur.*

CHAP. II.

The Succeſſors of Mahomet, *from the Nation of the* Turks, *continued to this preſent in the* Ottoman *Family.*

HAving partly touched before ſome of the preceeding Caliphs, whoſe Catalogue hath been moſt imperfectly delivered, we come now to thoſe his ſucceſſors in this Nation of the Turks, whoſe better and invincible fortune hath preſerved their memory, and given the world a dreadful ſeries of thoſe *Mahumetan* Potentates, who although they be not Caliphs, *nomine*, the Mufti executing the ſacerdotal part of that dignity; yet are they ſo great by their Imperial power, and the ſubordination of the Preiſtly to his arbitrary commands, and alone pleaſure.

The world heard not of this Slip, and branch of that Miſcreant Religion, till the fury of the Eaſtern *Tartars* had diſpoſſeſſed them of their worthleſs habitations in *Turcomania*, and at ſuch time alſo as the *Perſians* had recovered themſelves from the oppreſſing Arms of *Tangrolipix*, and their Couſin *Turks*, a remainder of whom, under Sultan *Aladin*, yet maintained a kind of vagrant Regality about *Iconium*, and thoſe parts of *Aſia* the leſs; whilſt thoſe acceſſional vagabonds under their Captain *Solyman*, the Chief of their

their Tribe arrived and obtained quarters, from their Countrymen, to repoſe their wearied and wretched Familes, who finding themſelves pent up in the narrowneſs of that precarious Territory; for the Chriſtians of the Greek Empire in *Aſia*, had ſtood with their arms in their hands to defend invaſions ſome good while before, their Captain *Solyman* deſigned an enlargement over the River *Euphrates*, in which attempting to paſs to the other ſhore, and diſdaining to return to his former ſeat, he was carried away by the violence of the ſtream and drowned therein; to the great loſs and greif of his followers.

He left behind him three Sons, but the *Turks* not then ſo nicely obſervant of Primogeniture, paſſing by the eldeſt, preferred *Ertogrul*, of whoſe courage and martial diſpoſition they had early experience. He by his own enterpriſes and aſſiſtance given to the ſaid *Sultan Aladin*, ſo confirmed himſelf in that parcel of Land given and augmented to him, that he was dignified and known by the name of *Ertogral Beg*, or Lord *Ertogrul*, which Title verpaged, he left to his Son *Oſman* or *Ottoman*, his youngeſt of three, whom the Tribe ſubſtituted in his Fathers place, from the ſame conſiderations with the former, about the year, 1300.

This *OTTOMAN*, who is taken for the Founder of this Empire, was the firſt of the *Turks*, that quarrelled with the *Chriſtians*,

(for which reason it may be supposed that Original glory is attributed to him) by seizing several of the Neighbour Castles, as namely that of *Cara Ciasar*, and afterwards others, as well by force as fraud, until those frequent exploits had rendred him rightly suspect to the Greek Emperours, whose Innovations in Religion, and persecutions thereupon, divisions and unnatural feuds, the Grand-Father, Father and Sons, supplanted one another, to the renversment of that once Mighty State, opened a way to the mean and despicable Armes of this rude Shepherd, even into the heart of the Empire.

For besides other lesser Skirmishes with the *Christians* and the *Turks* of *Nice*, (neer to which, at *Neapoly*, he erected the seat of his new Kingdom, having gained the most part of *Phrygia*, the greater *Misia*, and *Bythinia*, and caused himself to be called *Sultan*, after the death of *Aladin* of *Iconium*, in whom failed the *Zelzuccian* line, and whom he acknowledged as supreme,) he besieged *Prusa*, and there fought a great battel with the Confederate *Christian* Princes, in the confines of *Phrygia* and *Bythinia*, and after a long fight, obtained of them a bloody Victory; and so curbed that City by building Castles to keep them in, and block up the passages, that a while before he died, in the year 1327. It was rendred to his Son *Orchanes*, and made the Royal Seat of the *Ottoman* Kings, where in 1328. he dyed of the Gout, aged sixty nine years,

years, and was buried, a Monument of him remaining to this day.

ORCHANES his Son ſucceeded him, who had one onely Brother named *Aladin*, the peaceable enjoyer of a private life (for until the time of *Bajazet* the firſt, it was not the cuſtome to murder their brethren) this *Orchanes* had managed the Kingdom two years before his Fathers death, and therefore was the more expert in thoſe Arts by which his Father had enlarged his Dominions. He encountred with the *Greek* Emperour *Andronicus* at *Philochrene*, where it was a drawn Battel, thereafter he ſurprized *Nice*, regayned from him by the *Greeks*; by ſtrong hand he carried *Nicomedia*, as his Captains took in the Caſtle of *Abydos*, in the Sreights of the *Helleſpont*, whence they had a fair and eaſie proſpect into *Europe*, as he did *Calipolis* upon the other ſame ſhore, now one of the Arſenals and chiefeſt Ports in thoſe Seas: and which gave him firm footing in *Europe*, which *Orchanes* at the advice of *Solyman* his Son, who conquered it, peopled with *Sarazens* out of the County of *Caraſina*. In the year 1359. died *Orchanes*, aged almoſt eighty years, with grief at the death of his ſaid Son *Solyman*, who was killed with a fall from his Horſe as he was a Hawking, leaving his Son *Amurath* to extend his new acqueſts, further into *Thracia* and *Servia*.

AMU-

AMURATH a very politique and Martial Prince, at the very entrance of his Raign, Surprized *Adrianople*, and made the *Greeks*, who regarded not the loss of *Calipolis*, to bethink themselves of the danger of these encroachments. He was the first that began the order of the Janizaries, by taking Christian Children from their Parents, and crayning them up in the *Mahumetan* Laws and Manners, makes Leagues and Allyances with the *Asian* Potentates to secure his designes upon *Europe*, as to cherish the divisions among the *Greeks*, he did aid and assist the Emperour *Cantacuzenus* against *John Palæologus* the third, in the year . he invaded *Servia*, and took *Nyssa* the *Metropolis* thereof, and imposed a great Tribute upon the Country. Returning thence he carried his victorious arms against *Aladin*, King of *Caramania*, his Son in Law, by whom he had been provoked in his absence, and in a great Battel overthrew him, notwithstanding afterwards he restored him to his Kingdom upon conditions of homage. From hence he came back again to *Bulgaria*, which he over-ran, and in a Mortal Battel slew and overcame *Lazarus* the *Despot* of *Servia*, in the fatal plains of *Cossova*, where he himself proudly surveying the carriage of the field, was stabed in the belly by a wounded Christian Souldier named *Miles Cobbelitz*, who staggering to approach him, was by his own command admitted to his person; since

ſince which time no Ambaſſador is ſuffered to come before the Grand Seignior, unleſs his arms be guarded by one on each ſide. This happened in the year 1390. in the 31. year of his reign. He was interred at *Pruſa* with his Predeceſſors.

BAJAZET, ſirnamed *Gilderun* or Lightning, for his fierce and ſudden violence of nature, having ſtrangled his only brother *Jacup Zelebi* (ſo that he was the introducer of this moſt inhumane practiſe) ſucceeded his Father *Amurath*, and vanquiſhed and ſubdued *Mark* the Prince of *Bulgaria*, as he did alſo *Lazarus* the new *Deſpot* of *Servia* and ſpoyled *Valachia*, making the Vayvod thereof his Tributary. In *Aſia* he tyrannized over the Mahometan Princes, the ſucceſſors of *Aladin*, and in arrogance beſieged *Conſtantinople* twice, but in vain. He ſubdued *Theſſaly* and *Phoci*, defeated *Sigiſmond* King of *Hungary* at *Nicopolis*, aſſiſted by an Army of *French* and *Burgundians* with a terrible ſlaughter; ſo that the Turkiſh Power was firſt dreadful by his Puiſſance. He again vanquiſhed the ſtubborn *Aladin* of *Caramania* with his Kingdom, and the great Cities of *Amaſia* and *Sebaſtia*: in fine, uncivilly treating the Ambaſſadors of *Tamerlane*, ſent in behalf of the poor Princes of *Aſia*, he was by him neer *Sebaſtia*, after a moſt bloody diſpute overcome and taken priſoner, and put into an iron Cage, carried about for *Tamerlane*'s Horſe-block, until with impatience at his two years ſlavery, he

broke

broke out his brains againſt the grates, in the year 1399.

This overthrow ſo blaſted the greatneſs of the *Ottoman* Family, that it was hudled up in a general confuſion betwixt the intereſts and claims of *Bajazet's* Sons. *Solyman* his eldeſt Son poſſeſſed himſelf of his Conqueſts in *Europe*, and ſeated at *Adrianople*, *Mahomet* his younger at *Amaſia*, and defended his *Aſiatick* Provinces againſt the invaſion of the *Tartars*; ſome petty Princes whereof had thoſe aſſigned to them by *Tamerlane*. In concluſion, *Muſa* the ſecond brother releaſed out of his Captivity, with his Father's dead body, by the aſſiſtance of *Mahomet*, deſtroyed *Solyman*, and ſeized himſelf of his Kingdom; of which not long after, *Mahomet* diſpoſſeſſed *Muſa* and ſtrangled him, and united the whole entire Dominion under himſelf. He was but 15 years old when he began to reign, yet ſuch was his prudence and proweſs, that he reſtored this collapſed Empire in a few years. He died in 1422. and was buried at *Praſa* neer his Father *Bajazet*, who hath a ſumptuous Monument in that City.

AMURATH, now the ſecond, being ſent for to *Adrianople*, was there by the Baſhaws, according to the appointment of *Mahomet*, advanced to the Throne. His firſt work was the ſuppreſſion of a counterfeit Muſtapha the ſon of *Bajazet*, whom he cauſed to be ſtrangled. He next won *Theſſalonica*, with the greateſt part of *Atolia* and *Achaia*, and at the ſame time practiſed

&tiſed foully upon the King of *Epirus*, the Father of *Scanderbeg* by poyſon, as tyrannically upon the petty Princes of *Aſia*; whence he converted his Army againſt the *Deſpot* of *Servia*, whom he vallalized, but invaded *Tranſylvania* with loſs; whereupon by much intreaty he obtained peace of *Uliadſlaus* King of *Hungary*, who breaking his faith ſo ſolemnly given, and invading *Amurath*, engaged in a proſperous War with the *Caraman* King in *Aſia*, was by *Amurath* recalled thus into *Europe*, moſt miſerably defeated at *Varna*, and there ſlain. The remainder of his long reign was ſpent in vexation at the ſucceſſes of *Scanderbeg*, whom with all his power he was not able to reduce, whereupon he retired to a Monaſtery, and with grief he died, leaving the Government to his Son *Mahomet*.

MAHOMET was a perfect Athieſt, of no Faith or Religion, murdered his Brethren, ſubdued *Menteſia*, and took *Conſtantinople* on the 29. of *May* 1453. and thereby put an end to the Greek Empire, and cauſed himſelf to be ſtiled Emperor. To omit the known ſtory of his Concubine *Irene*, we muſt paſs with him to the ſiege of *Belgrade* in *Hungary*, whence he was forced to riſe with great loſs and diſhonour, having been himſelf dangerouſly wounded, afterwards he practiſed upon the Princes of *Valachia*, and brought a horrible devaſtation on the Country, and deſigned the like Treachery upon *Scanderbeg*, but by him worſted

worſted before *Croja*; nevertheleſs he gained *Sordea* from the *Venetians* after a vain and bloody ſiege by Treatie and Compoſition. He attempted and ſtaggered the *Perſian* King alſo: In vain likewiſe he beſieged *Rhodes*, and invaded *Italy*; as his purpoſes againſt the *Caramanian* King were diſappointed by his death, not without ſuſpicion of poyſon, 1481. He was buried at *Conſtantinople*.

BAJAZET, his Son ſucceeded him, and firſt managed a War againſt his brother *Zemes*, who flying to *Rhodes*, and thence ſent to *Rome*, was poyſoned by Pope *Alexander* the ſixth, bribed thereunto by *Bajazet*. He prepared for an expedition to *Hungary*, but durſt not proſecute it, the effect ſpeeding it ſelf to his great loſs upon *Valachia* and *Tranſylvania*, with more indifferent fortune he combated *Caitbeius* the Sultan of *Egypt*, but finally vanquiſhed the *Caramanian* King, and united that Kingdom to his own. He quarrelled the *Venetians*, and took and loſt ſeveral places: The end as the beginning of his reign, was diſquieted with the unnatural diſloyaltie of his Sons, *Cocutus*, *Achomates* and *Selymus*, at whoſe inſtance he was at laſt poyſoned by a Jew his Phyſician, in the year, 1512.

SELIMUS began his reign, not only with the death of his Father, but the murder of his brother *Corcutus*, and five of his brother *Achomates*

met's Sons, makes war againſt *Hyſmael* the *Perſian* Sophy, with whom he had a ſignal encounter beyond *Euphrates*; but ſuch was the equal fortune of the day, that *Selymus* content to have coped perſonally with that renowned and dreadful Potentate, retreated back to *Conſtantinople*, whence he threatned *Hungary*, but the force and fury of his Army fell upon *Campſon Gaurus* and *Tomombeus*, Sultans of the Mamaluke Empire, whom he overthrew in two fatal battels at *Singa*, and in the City of *Grand Cairo*, which with *Egypt* and *Syria* were annexed to his Dominions. In his return hence, as he was meditating an uſeful expedition into *Hungary*, being ſeized by a canker in his back, he breathed out his revengeful ſoul in the year 1520.

SOLYMAN his only Son (not ſo ſtrange, conſidering his Father was a moſt Martial Prince) ſucceeded to the Throne; in whoſe reign this great Empire roſe to its higheſt pinnacle and culmination of Glory. He was ſirnamed the Magnificent for the nobleneſs of his Acts: He firſt conquered the Iſle of *Rhodes*, defeated King *Lewis* of *Hungary*, and ſlew him at *Mohaez*, and beſieged *Vienna*, but in vain. In fine, this was the potent Monarch that conquered *Hungary*, took *Buda Strigonum*, *Alba Regalis*, in pretence of the right of King *John* and his Orphant elected by the *Hungarian* Nobility againſt the due title of *Ferdinand*. He likewiſe threatned *Italy* with his Fleets, and aided the

French

French King by them againſt *Charles* the Fifth, as he likewiſe combated the *Perſian* Kings, *Hyſmael* and *Tamas*: He beſieged *Malta* by his General *Muſtapha*, but was there worſted. Towards the latter end of his reign he was enjealouſed by his Paramour *Recotane* againſt the Noble Prince *Muſtapha*, his eldeſt Son by another woman, to make way for her children, and *Muſtapha* ſtrangled, as *Selyman* was upon a pretended Expedition againſt the *Perſians*. In his ſeventh and laſt expedition into *Hungary* he died, at the ſiege of *Zigerh*, 1566. having made *Hungary* a Province of *Turkie*. *Selymus* having met his Fathers Corps about *Belgrade* (having been privily advertiſed of his death by *Mahomet Baſſa*, who had concealed it from the *Janizaries*, as is uſual in that Government, to avoid the mutiny of the Janizaries) was there ſaluted Emperor, but not admitted to the Seraglio at his return to *Conſtantinople*, till he had given them a large Donative. He was a Prince no way like his Father, but given to exceſs and debauchery, which made him willing to make peace with the Emperor of *Germany* and the *Perſians*; notwithſtanding by his Captains he gained *Cyprus* from the *Venetians*, as he loſt the famous battel of *Lepanto* to *Don John* of *Auſtria*. Toward the end of his reign he ſubdued *Moldavia* and *Valachia* more abſolutely to the Turkiſh ſubjection, as he alſo reduced the Kingdom of *Tunis*, and the ſtrong Caſtle of *Guletta*, taken from *Barbaroſſa* by *Charles* the fifth 42 years before. He died at the 51 year of his age, ſpent with wine and

and women, and in the year of the Incarnation 1574.

AMURATH the third ſucceeded him, having cauſed his five Brethren to be ſtrangled in his ſight: He was a Prince not vicious as his Father, but given to peace, and addicted to a quiet life, and managed his Arms as his Father had done before him, by Lieutenants, who were famous men in their times, as *Sinan*, *Ferhates Muſtapha*, and *Oſman Baſſa* the firſt and laſt of whom, ſorely plagued the *Perſians*, againſt whom *Amurath* was provoked by a dream and viſion, and took from them the Province of *Media*, now called *Sirvan*, a great part of the greater *Armenia*, and the Regal City of *Tauris* after two or three diſmal encounters; they confirmed likewiſe the *Crim-Tartar* in a ſurer obedience to the *Ottoman* Family. The ſame *Sinan* waged a fierce War in *Hungary*, took *Raab* and other Towns, but they were all recovered again, and he after many grand atchievements ſhamefully driven to flie out of *Hungary*, by *Sigiſmund* Prince of *Tranſylvania*, ſince which time until this day, the Turks power was never formidable in *Europe*. *Amurath* died in the year 1595. having raigned 21. years.

MAHOMET the third, his eldeſt Son ſucceeded him, commencing his reign with the bloody Maſſacre of 18. of his Brethren, and ten of his Fathers Wives and Concubines

thought to be impregnate with Poſthume iſſue, that ſo he might make ſure work. He was dreaded before his aſſumption to the Crown, to have been of a fierce and untractable nature, but he proved a meer ſwine; for he was memorable for nothing of military concernment, but his perſonal appearance in *Hungary* with 200000 men, where he took *Agria*, and was preſent at the battel of *Kereſture* in 1596. the ſecond of his reign, out of which field he run in the beginning of the Fight, and would never endure to hear of an engagement again; ſomething was done by his Captains in *Hungary*, but as much was done againſt them, and things continued there in *ſtatu quo* to his death, which happned by his unweildy Fat, under which he could not ſtand; in the year 1603.

ACHMAT his Son, a ſtripling ſucceeded him, a Prince proud and imperious, yet no way Martial: he had ſome Piques with the *Perſian* who threatned him hard, and made him glad to urge a peace with *Rodolphus* the Emperor, being alſo perplexed with his Rebels in *Aſia*. Like his Predeceſſors he was engaged in a *Valachian* and *Moldavian* War, which he finiſhed with victory, taking the Princes *Alexander*, *Bougdan* and *Coreſky* Priſoners, the latter of whom made a great buſtle in the *Ottoman* Court, by his eſcape out of priſon. This Sultan *Achmat* was much given to women, and with too frequent uſe of them died young, at the age of 30 years in 1617.

As

As to his Sons and Succeſſors, having ſpoken of them in the modern Hiſtory of the Turks hereto adjoyned, this is their brief Character: *Muſtapha* the Brother German of *Achmat* appointed by him, becauſe of the minority of his Sons, to the Government, was a bookiſh Philoſophical man, and bred in the fear of death all his dayes. *Oſman*, *Achmat*'s Son, who dethroned him, a Prince of 16. years of age, was a very forward active Prince: he quarrelled with the *Poles*, and perceiving in that War the ſloath and cowardlineſs of the Janizaries, by which he came off with diſhonour, by the advice of *Derlavir* the grand Viſier, an experienced honeſt man, and a great Captain on the *Aſian* ſide, intended the extirpation of them, and the erection of a new Militia; which deſign being ſented, was the cauſe of both their deaths, *Oſman* being ſtrangled in priſon, and the Viſier cut in pieces, by the tumultuous mutinies of thoſe Bands.

MUSTAPHA was re-inthroned, but was the ſame man, and again depoſed by the ſame Janizaries; and Sultan *Morat*, the brother of *Achmat* eſtabliſhed. He was as warlike a Prince as his brother or any of his Progenitors, for he recovered *Bagdat*, taken by the *Perſians* during theſe changes at *Conſtantinople*, and there in proſecution of his Brothers intentions, deſigned the perdition of thoſe Janizaries, but dying

dying there, they eſcaped the puniſhment due to ſuch Rebels as embrue their hands in their Princes blood. *Oſman* was wont to ſay, *That he was no Emperor, but a Pay-maſter to a company of Droans*, meaning thoſe Souldiers. *Ibrahim* his Brother and Succeſſor, was nothing like him in courage, however he bravadoed the *Venetians*, and began a War there for one of his Women, a more honourable cauſe being not like to engage him. And what his Son *Mahomet* will prove muſt be left to his appearance in perſon this Campania: but if he be like his Viſier, as they ſay he is in moſt things, he is moſt juſtly to be dreaded.

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

The Extent and Dominion of his Empire.

TVrky owes ſo much to its barbarous power and greatneſs, that it is almoſt bankrupt in its renown and glory, while the Chriſtian world debar'd of any free and unjealouſied converſe, or wanting the advantage thereof by the rudeneſs, ignorance, and vaſt depopulations of the reſpective Provinces of this ſpacious Monarchy do conclude and gaze upon it as a Monſter, ſpreading and winding his pernicious bulk upon the face of *Europe*, more by a brute impulſe and ſudden violent effort, then by the conduct and directions of true reaſon and policy, which by a juſt and exact diſquiſition of their atcheivements and conqueſts, will be found of the beſt extraction from the trueſt refined wiſdom, and to reliſh of that pure and genuine intellect, which in the free-born world is reported and credited to have deſcended upon, and bleſt this Tract and Regions, however our vicious and depraved ſenſe, perplexed with the Matchivilian Intrigues of Government, doth falſly conceive of it as exotick ſimplicity, and of their Proweſs as the forced reſult of their Savage and ferally Rapinous diſpoſition.

The Preface.

Our miſtakes concerning Turkiſh Government.

Our purpoſe therefore is in deſcribing of the dimenſions of this large and ample Territory, to obſerve the manner and means of their augmentation, and Coalition into this entire and

grand conſiſtency, with a Chronology of each Provinces reduction to the *Ottoman* Scepter, from under the Government of their former and natural Princes. The preſent Politiques, and Civil and Eccleſiaſtical, Martial and Judiciary Adminiſtration of this Potent and moſt extenſive Soverainty, its Magnificence, Pomp and Splendor, not interfering with what hath been ſaid before, but in a diſtinct & orderly method, for perfect and plenary information of the Reader.

Nor will it therefore be neceſſary to pry into thoſe lurking holes and abdite retreats of their deſpicable and unobſerved Anceſtry, ſince the diſagreement of their Originals is rather the glory of their adult and mature eſtate and grandeur, and concerns not their ſtory or preſent condition, for you will find it briefly, but ſatisfactorily mentioned in this following Treatiſe.

The convenient Scite of the Empire.

Conſidering this Dominion in general, there is nothing can be faulted in it which is requiſite to the ſupport of its grandeur. For its Scituation it is placed moſt conveniently for an univerſal or fifth Monarchy, being divided equally into *Europe* and *Aſia*, the very center of the Earth, whereby he may be ready on all occaſions to ſtretch his Conqueſt either way, and be quick and ready at hand with recruits and ſupplies to carry on a war in either quarter. His *Imperial* City of *Conſtantinople* being the extremeſt limit of both Regions, officiouſly attended and ſerved by two Seas, the Euxine and the Mediterranean, which combine their waters by the walls of the

Magnifi-

Magnificent Seraglia, and do joyn in Homage to his mighty Lord and Ruler.

He hath alſo large Territories in *Affrick*, and the red Sea under his command in part, ſo that of the habitable world he hath the biggeſt and faireſt proportion, and by that means may when his Ambition ſhall incite him to extend his Arms and Dominions further, in any of theſe quarters, provided the Conqueſt be worth the purchaſe, and his affairs at Home or the oppoſite Regions will afford him opportunity, for it is to be noted the Grand Signior never makes war in two places together, nor long in one place, either fearing the contagions of his enemies manners ſhould ſpread among his own people, which he carefully avoids, as the bane of his Tyranny, or elſe ſuſpecting that his own deficiencies in the Art Military, or ſome other inconveniencies of his Souldiery may be notified to the adverſary by any continuance in their Country, juſt like a Lyon and a Dragon fighting, or inſults and reſults, taking and leaving as he pleaſeth, ſo that moſt of his deſign and force ſeems to lye in the invaſion and intruſive manage thereof; The French fury, and Turkiſh incurſion being equally terrible and as ſoon abated, unleſs extraordinary Fortune and other concurrent advantages hold them longer in breath and proſecution, which is much to be feared in this preſent juncture, and the condition of *Hungary*, from whence, and the *European* parts adjacent, we will begin this Survey of this mighty Empire.

His conſtant policy in making war.

Sclavonia described. We will enter into that part which is nearest to us, and leads into the body of his Dominions, *Sclavonia*, divided now into six Provinces, bounded on the East with *Servia*, *Macedonia* and *Epirus*, from which they are parted by the River *Drinus*, and a line drawn from thence unto the *Adriatick*; on the West with *Carniola* in *Germany* and *Histria* in the Seigniory of *Venice*, from which last they are divided by the River *Arsia*; on the North with *Hungary*; and on the South the *Adriatick* Sea, containing in length eight hundred *Italian* miles, (the breadth being 325) those Provinces are, *Windischand*, *Croatia*, *Bosnia*, *Dalmatia*, *Liburnia* or the Country of *Zara*, and *Sclavonian* Isles.

Bosnia described. Of this Territory *Bosnia* is wholly the *Turks*, it was united as a Kingdom unto *Hungary*, and under the Homage thereof a Kingdom by it self in 1420. as is reported; but as it was a Kingdom of a latter date, so was it of as short continuance; for in the year 1464. *Mahomet* the Great having taken *Constantinople*, and almost all the rest of *Greece*, suddenly surprised and seized it, together with *Stephen* the last King thereof, he most barbarously commanded him to be flead alive (whereby he terrified all other Pretenders) and then converted it to a Province of his Empire; thereafter, and yet governed by one of the principallest of his Bashaws.

DALMATIA; In this Province, though the *Venetians* have a share, yet it is a very inconsiderable one, yet it stretches all North along the *Adriatick* Sea or Gulf of *Venice*, (whereto they pre-

pretend a ſole Dominion and Juriſdiction) for they pay for the cuſtoms of all Trade and Merchandize, a certain ſtipend yearly to the *Turk*, with which engine it is thought they have for ſo many ages held play with him, being ever in danger of a rupture and war, but much againſt their wills and inclinations; upon the ſame account the *Great Turk* is Protector of the little Common-wealth of *Raguſa*, very rich formerly by their Traffick upon the adjoyning Sea without this protection they had long ere now fallen into the hands of the *Venetians*, as on t' other ſide they are preſerved by the State of *Venice* from being a prey to their Protector. So that it is the very parallel of the State of *Genoa* lying betwixt the Duke of *Savoy*, the *French* and *Spaniard*. This *Raguſa*, is the Maritin ne deſcent into *Turkie*.

The *Grand Seignior* protector of the State of *Raguſa*.

The ISLES (ſome of which belong to *Raguſa*) as *Curzola* or *Coreyra*, *Zara* and the reſt have been often ranſacked and pillaged by the Turks, but never poſſeſſed by them, as not caring for ſuch remote and dangerous Tenures, being plaſted in a boyſterous and deſtructive Sea.

The Iſles of *Sclavonia*.

In the County of ZARA the *Turk* hath a good part, as he hath firm footing in *Windiſchland*, the parts whereof lying much to *Hungary* on the North and Eaſt, do groan under the Bondage of the *Turkiſh Garriſons*, ſome whereof are alſo placed in *Croatia*, where the *Turk* in 1592. took *Whitiz* the Metropolis, though fortified ſtrongly both by Art and Nature in the form of a Iſland by the River *Una*, when contrary to

County of *Zara*.

the Articles of surrender, he put all the Souldiers immediately to the Sword. Now for better elucidation of the Turks part in the whole, we will sum it up in this partition:

The whole apportioned

The *Venetians* possess the greatest part of the Islands, and all the Sea coasts from the River *Arisia* to the Bay of *Cattharo* (the City and Commonwealth of *Ragusa* onely excepted;) the House of *Austria*, as Kings of *Hungary*, the inland parts of *Windischland* and *Croatia*; and the Turks who set footing here in the reign of Mahomet the Great, the whole Kingdom of *Bosnia*, the patronage of *Ragusa*, some Towns in *Windischland* and *Croatia*, and all the residue of *Dalmatia*, from the Bay of *Cattaro* to *Albania*, so that he hath the better half of this Region of *Sclavonia*.

Hungary.

In *HUNGARY* it self, by the Victories of *Solyman* the Magnificent, who (upon the death of *Lewis* the Second, King of *Hungary*, that lost unfortunately the Battel of *Mohatz*, and was drowned in his flight) was called in by *John Sepusio*, Vayvod of *Transilvania*, chosen King by election of the States of *Hungary*, against the hereditary claim of *Ferdinand* Arch Duke of *Austria*, &c. such advantage was made in the dissention betwixt the two rival Kings, that upon the death of *John Sepusio* in 1540. that under colour of Patronage to *Stephen*, *Johns* Orphan whom he took into his own tuition, and afterwards deprived (having deliberated to put him to death) he seized *Buda* the Capitol City with other Towns, and from that time his succes-

ceſſors, but eſpecially himſelf, have never omitted any occaſions or advantages of the Chriſtian quarrels to enlarge their dominion in this Kingdom, wch ſame deſign this ſucceſsful preſent Emperor hath ſo far proſecuted, that there remains not to the Emperor above four places of Note and ſtrength in that Kingdom, which are *Raab*, *Comorra*, *Tockay* and *Presburg*, the laſt confining upon *Auſtria* it ſelf, while the whole Country, Towns & Villages, even beyond the limits of that Realm are ſubjected to, and ly open to this barbarous enemy.

The preſent condition thereof.

So that moſt men conclude, *Actum eſt de Hungaria*, and give it over as a Province of the Turkiſh Empire, to which it was in as forward a condition after the battel of *Kereſture* in 1578. when *Mahomet* the third took in *Agria*, and making advantage of the *Lutheran* innovation in *Germany*, which then divided the Princes thereof, had ſwallowed the Conqueſt, but was ſo near an utter over-throw himſelf, being forced to forſake the field in a moſt diſorderly frightful flight, in which with haſt he loſt his Turbant, that had not the Chriſtians out of greedineſs of Plunder and Spoil, left the purſuit ſcarce begun, to rifle the Camp, which gave the Turks time and courage to rally, *Mahomet* had hardly recovered *Conſtantinople*: But by reaſon of this diſaſtrous covetouſneſs the fortune of the battel was quite changed, with ſuch a diverſity, that as Dr. *Heylin* elegantly obſerveth, the *Conquerours were beaten out of the field, and the vanquiſhed ran away with the victory.*

Battel of *Kereſture.*

Belgrade.

Among other poſſeſſions of the Turks in *Hungary*, before we depart thence, *Belgrade* anciently called *Taurunum*, or *Alba Greca*, once the poſſeſſion of the Deſpots of *Servia*, by whom it was conſigned to *Sigiſmond* King of *Hungary*, as the beſt able to maintain it, deſerves our obſervation; it is ſeated upon the confluence of the *Savus* and *Danow*, by the former of which it is hemmed in on the North, and on the Eaſt by the latter; it was heretofore the great Bulwark of Chriſtendom againſt the Turks, who were often times worſted and defeated before it (eſpecially *Amurath* the Second, and *Mahomet* the Great) but at laſt taken to the ſhame of Chriſtendom for not ſuccouring the beſieged in time, by *Solyman* the Magnificent, in the year 1552. not to mention ſome other principal places beſides theſe named, as *Gran* or *Strigonium*, at the taking whereof by the Emperor *Rodolph*, in the year 1595. Sir *Thomas Arundel* of *Wardour* for forcing the water Tower, and bringing thence a Turkiſh Banner, was made a Count of the Empire, and after Lord *Wardour* of *Arundel* by King *James*, *Alba Regalis*, *Quinque Eccleſio*, *Zigeth*, *Temeſwar*, *Peſt Colocza* an Arch-Biſhops See, &c. and now *Newhauſel* and *Novigrand*.

L. *Arundel of Wardour*

Dacia.

In *DACIA*, the Eaſtern bound of *Hungaria*, he is abſolute Lord and Maſter. In this Region are contained the Provinces of *Tranſylvania*, *Moldavia*, *Valachia*, *Raſcia*, *Servia* and *Bulgaria*, the four firſt in old *Dacia* North of the *Danow*, the two laſt in the new on the South ſide thereof.

Tran-

Tranſylvania bounded on the Eaſt with *Moldavia*, on the Weſt with *Upper Hungary*, on the North with *Ruſſia Nigra*, on the South with *Raſcia* and *Valachia*, hath its name from the great Woods lying between it and *Hungary*. This people is divided into ſeven Cantons, keeping their own laws, fatally and inſenſibly betrayed to the Turkiſh yoke, by *John Sepuſio* the Son of *Stephen*, Vayvod of *Tranſylvania* (which was the title in uſe before *Sigiſmund Battori*, who ſtiled himſelf Prince) who as aforeſaid called in *Solyman*: his Infant Son *Stephen* was afterwards by him made Vayvod of *Tranſylvania*, a fine recompence for his Fathers kindneſs to the Turk: ſince which time the Grand Signior claims the Inveſtiture of the Provinces hereof, and a yearly Tribute, beſides their initiating Bribes and Preſents: many revolts have been attempted, but none ſo ſignal, as firſt that of *Sigiſmond Battori*, who defeated ſeveral Turkiſh Armies, and ſhook off the Turkiſh yoke with ſcorn and indignation, but his ſucceſſors have been forced to accept of it again, and their Subjects contented to pay the Tribute, for which they enjoy their National Laws and Liberties of Religion. Secondly that of *Ragotzi* in 1659. and 1660. who was likewiſe very ſucceſsful againſt the forces of this preſent *Sultan*, but he being wounded in his laſt conflict with them, was carried to *Varadin*, where he ended his life, much honoured and lamented by his Subjects. *Varadin* which is one of the ſtrongeſt pieces of this Country, but Garriſon'd by *Hungarians*, was ſoon

Tranſylvania.

The revolt of *Tranſylvania.*

Ragotzi dieth.

ſoon after taken by the Viſier Baſſa, and the proſecution of the war in *Hungaria* from this Pique hence undertaken, as from a neer view of thoſe troubles and dangers which threatened the Empire of *Germany* on the other ſide. The preſent Prince of this Country *Michael Apaffi*, is wholly at the Devotion of the Turk, and is reciprocally careſſed by them, but how long the kindneſs will laſt, the *Germain* War will ſoon determine; the *Tranſilvanians* are moſt part of the *Calviniſts*.

Moldavia deſcribed. *MOLDAVIA* is bounded on the Eaſt with the Sea, on the Weſt with *Tranſilvania*, on the North with the River *Nieſter* and *Podolia*, a part of *Poland*, and on the South with *Walachia*; it is a fruitful Country, but very thin of people, by reaſon of thoſe depopulations made by *Turks*, *Tartars*, and *Coſſacks*, nevertheleſs it ſupplies *Conſtantinople* with five hundred Ships laden yearly with proviſion for *Conſtantinople*, it is in diameter every way three hundred miles, they believe with the Greek Church, and are tolerated therein like other Chriſtians in the ſame condition. Their Vayvod is a Tributary and Beneficiary of the Grand Seignior, and is placed and diſplaced as he pleaſeth, but he that gives moſt commonly now adays is honoured with the Dignity. The eminenteſt of their Princes ſubſtituted in this manner have been *John* the Vayvod about 1570. who gave a terrible overthrow to the Turks, aſſiſted by *Peter* the Vayvod of *Valachia*, who had bought, and now fought for the poſſeſſion of

of the Vayvod-ſhip, but was at laſt perfidiouſly murthered by the Turks 1574. when *Moldavia* ſubmitted to them, but was again wreſted from them forcibly by *Aaron* the Vayvod, confederate with *Sigiſmond* Prince of *Tranſilvania*, whom themſelves had placed, who being alſo again diveſted, and betrayed by *Roſwan*, one of his diſloyal and ambitious Subjects, *Moldavia* ſheltered it ſelf under the tuition of the *Polanders*, who have ſince placed ſome Vayvods, but to their perpetual loſs and trouble, and then of *Rodolphus* the Emperor, but at laſt again it reverted to the Turk, who raged there in the year 1622. when young *Oſman* was Emperour, ſince which time the Vayvods have lived with good correſpondence with the Port, and now attend this expedition of the Grand Seignior into *Germany*; but though they are abſolute Vaſſals, yet is not their Country quite conquered, or ſo much as marched over or throughly traverſed by thoſe Infidels.

The various attempts of the *Moldavians* to recover their Liberty.

VALACHIA is the next Province, once one and the ſame with *Moldavia*, but by a modern diſtinction defined and divided from it by the name of *Tranſalpina*, a ridge of Mountains croſſing both Countries; they follow the Greek Church, and obey the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*, whom thoſe Chriſtian parts of the world acknowledge as ſupreme: but as their Neighbors are ignorant of all letters, and ſo the fitter for the Mahumetan Impoſitions.

Valachia deſcribed.

It is in length five hundred, in breadth a hundred and twenty miles, and very plentiful of all things,

things, the Store-house with the other adjacent Provinces of penurious *Asia*, and gives credit and reputation as it borrows its fertility, to the River *Ister*, which in its confines, and by the confluence of other Rivers into the *Danow*, is here so called. The people hereof were governed by Vayvods of their own, till the Turks invasion made them seek for the King of *Hungaries* protection, to whose often and very great discomfitures they have been highly instrumental, but with various fortune, from the time of *Bajazet* the first, who vanquished their Prince, and was himself caged by *Tamberlane*, until this last age.

It afterwards was resigned into the several vicine Provinces as the necessity & occasion of war advised, still stubborn against the Turkish yoke, while the prevailing fortune thereof made all the Territory about them to undergo it; yet with a great deal less of slavery then the rest; For *Mahomet* the Great in the year 1642. very unsuccessfully undertaking the entire conquest of this Country, wherein he found more Rocks, Mountains, and Precipices then humane defence, prudently declining any further attempt, by the more destructive mines of Empire, hurled the state thereof into a Convulsive and distracted Ruine, by the intestine Divisions of the two Brothers, *Waldus* the Prince, and *Dracula* his younger Brother, whose interest he set up and assisted to their common destruction.

Mahomets Policy.

By which means and his Auxiliaries residence there, He was not to be disputed with longer,

and

and therupon was acknowledged the Lord of the Principality under certain limitations and reſtrictions to his ſupreme power, which the neerneſs of a continual aid from the Chriſtian world adjoyning thereunto induced him to allow. We have ſpoken of *Michael* the Noble Vayvod thereof in 1659. who had in all probability by his ſingular valour and generoſity freed this warlike Nation from their dependance on this Tyrant, and ſhould mention the like bravery of their late Vayvod in conjunction with *Ragotzi*, but the urgent Fate of the Empire would not have thoſe petit ſtruglings to bear any part in her general calamity; yea, hath ſuffered thoſe puny and indifferent limbs of Chriſtianity to be monſtrouſly turned into arms againſt her, and to aſſiſt the barbarous violences that now oppreſs and ravage the *Auſtrian* Dominions, yet have the Turks got nothing in this conqueſt but a ſafe Retreat, which hath coſt them five times the money they will ever make of it, were it not that their aſſurances of our diviſions will one day quit their expence, as otherwiſe, which God for his mercy vouchſafe, it is now and may prove to be able to pay his ſcore, if once he turns his back to the face of a competent and couragious Chriſtian Army. *Moldavia* a very expenſive conqueſt.

RASCIA is bounded on the Eaſt with *Valachia*, on the Weſt with *Hungaria*, on the North with *Tranſylvania*, on the South with the River *Danow*, and on the Eaſt divided from *Valachia*, by the River *Aluta*. The people hereof are ſo wretched, that they have loſt their very *Raſcia.*

name,

name, not a Gentleman ſurviving this depreſſion, they have been linked into the Government of their neighbours, but now ſcarce know any body but their tyrannical Maſters, to whom they do excellent ſervice, when this natural courage, which like Brutes they retain, is emulouſly provoked by other more barbarous Nations. By their union with *Servia* they taſted of the ſame fortune, and were ſubjugated by the glorious *Amurath* the ſecond, at the time that thoſe Deſpots (who had unjuſtly vanquiſhed this people) were captivated themſelves. Fate ſhewing herein, how deſperate a folly it is for Princes or (to deſcend to) private men, to undertake any unjuſt, though advantageous deſign upon another, while there is a Superiour Enemy thereby invited to the umperage of the quarrel. Theſe *Raſcians* do yet ſo retain their primitive hatred againſt the Turks, that upon all occaſions they have been ready to wreak themſelves, but to very little purpoſe, more then to ſhow their more noble extract and anceſtry.

Unjuſt & indiſcreet ambition deſervedly puniſhed.

The three Provinces mentioned before *Raſcia*, do and have enjoyed more liberty then any people under the Turkiſh Dominions, becauſe firſt the Turk hath not Colonies to plant them, being not ſo numerous as his Armie ſpeaks him, for all his *Polygamy*; and ſecondly becauſe their often overthrows (as they have infeebled their Natives, and in their long reſiſtance deſolated the Country, ſo that a man cannot find an Inn or Harbour in a days riding) have diſheartned an expedition on purpoſe; *Mahomet* the Great,

who

who firſt attempted them, ſaying in great anger, that he came not to fight with Beaſts, or which was more unequal, againſt Nature it ſelf, who had by ſo many abrupt or uncouth ways hindred the progreſs of his moſt induſtrious and eager Ambition, which his ſucceſſors notwithſtanding from that kind of precarious Soveraignty have improved into an awful ſubmiſſion, and addreſs to the Port with two hundred thouſand Chequins yearly, which makes ſome 45 thoupounds ſterling, beſides the Fees and Preſents of the reſpective Princes. But, what their condition is now like to be, the event of this preſent enterpriſe will beſt declare, but as now they are not fit for, or elſe not worth his fury, onely miſerable *Raſcia*, not honoured with a Governour, ſuffers all extremity. And ſo we muſt paſs the *Danow* to its Southern ſhore, the two Kingdoms, or deſpotical Provinces of *Servia* and *Bulgaria*.

SERVIA is bounded on the Eaſt with *Bulgaria*, on the Weſt with *Boſnia*, on the North with the *Danubius*, on the South with *Albania* and part of *Macedon*, a rich and fruitful country for grain and gain, concealed in the repoſitories of ſeveral mines of Gold and Silver, and therefore much peopled by the Turks after their general Exciſion and Maſſacre (in a manner) of the Chriſtian Inhabitants by *Amurath*, in the year 1367. when he took *Niſſa* their Capital City, and Key of the Country, in revenge of their Deſpots aſſiſting the *Hungarians* in the ſiege of *Adrianople*, but after the death of *Servia* ſurveyed.

Mahomet the great seizeth it.

of *Lazarus* the last Despot, *Mahomet* the Great not satisfied with a Tribute which *Amurath* had imposed, dispossessed his three Orphans *Peter*, *John*, and *Martyn* (who fled to the *Hungarian* protection) in title of *Lazarus*'s two other brothers, who craved his assistance, and thereby with dread and Terror destroyed most of the Natives, by empaling, gaunching, fleaing, and all other devices of Torture, so that he quickly tamed their courage, and made them the second province of the Eastern, or Greek Empire, that acknowledged and humbled it self to his Conquest and Dominion, in the year 1460.

Bulgaria described.

BULGARIA is bounded on the East with the *Euxine* Sea, West with *Servia*, on the North with the River *Danow*, which is here called *Ister*, and on the South with *Thrace*. It was governed by Kings till *Amurath* the first reduced it by his Arms, (and the abject submission of *Sasmenos* the last Prince, who humbled himself in a winding-sheet before that Tyrant in 1369.) after by *Bajazet* his Son, not content therewith, made a Province under the absolute Government of the Turks; who in *Nicopolis*, *Sophia*, and *Silistria*, have three Sanjacks or Major Generals under the command of the *Beglerbeg* or Vice-Roy of *Greece*.

It is a mountainous and woody Country, the Plains thereof being thick planted with tall Trees, so that it furnisheth *Constantinople* with fewel, and is a good defence against any sudden irruptions into the more inward part of *Romania*; famous for the many Battels fought herein by

Tra-

Trajan the Emperor, who built *Nicopolis*, interpreted *The City of victory*, in memory of his Conqueſt of *Dacia*, and by modern Potentates, *Sigiſmond* Emperor and *Bajazet* the firſt which was fatal to the Chriſtians, and *Michael* the brave Vayvod of *Valachia* againſt *Mahomet* the third as calamitous and deſtructive to the Turks. Not to mention the plains of *Coſſova*, where *Miles Cobelitz*, a private Souldier riſing from among the dead, ſlew *Amurath* the firſt: and for that three days incounter betwixt *Huniades* and *Amurath* the ſecond, both of them with the adverſeſt fortune that Chriſtians ever fought with; which is to this day alledged as an argument againſt any Invaſion upon the Mahometan Territory, how fondly, the encroachments of that enemy ſo many miles upon Chriſtian ground doth ſadly evince.

And ſo we have finiſhed the ſurvey of *Dacia*, ſometimes poſſeſſed by the *Romans*, afterwards by the *Scythians*, then by the *Greek* Emperors, & laſtly ſwallowed by the Turks, who keep it ſo fettered, that it will hardly know another Maſter.

Our next aſpect tends towards *Græcia*; but in our way thither we muſt paſs over Mount *Hæmus*, ſo high and open to the weather, that it is ſaid of it, that for eight months in the year it is alwayes cold, for the other four winter. There are but two paſſes, and thoſe thought ſo impregnable by their abruptneſs, that with little defence they are the invincible ſecurity of the Turkiſh dominion on the other ſide, as *Huniades* in his expedition to the ſiege of Mount *Hæmus*.

Hadrianople ſadly experimented; but our Survey ſhall have leave and licenſe to deſcend.

Gracia. *GRÆCIA* thus entertains our ſight, which from the glorious and moſt noble ſtructure of Empire, in the third univerſal Monarchy, abridged afterwards by civil Fate, and the unwilling diſreſpect of time, into the Empire of the Eaſt, is crept into moſt petty and deſpiſed Cantons of this barbarous Signiory, cut out and partitioned under the commands of ſeveral inferiours, but moſt cruel Governours, all ſubjected to the Beglerbeg of *Romania*, ſo called by us, but by them *Rum Ili*.

In the preſent Latitude and extent thereof it is bounded on the Eaſt with the *Propontick*, *Helleſpont*, and *Ægean* Seas, on the Weſt with the *Adriatick*, on the North with Mount *Hæmus*, which parteth it from *Bulgaria*, *Servia*, and part of *Illyrium*, on the South with the Sea *Jonian*, ſo that it is in a manner a Peninſula or Demy Iſland, environ'd on three ſides by the Sea, and on the fourth with the reſt of Europe.

To give precedency to Chriſtianity in the brief deſcription of this Region, it will be ſatisfactory to give a little account of the Greek Church (before-hand) in this part. The Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*, who was reckoned the laſt in order and dignity, is now notwithſtanding the principal and chief of all, in point of latitude & power, which hath engroſſed the moſt concerning affairs of the Church to it ſelf, for he preſides over all *Greece*, *Ruſſia*, *Dacia*, *Sclavonia*, part of *Poland*, and all the Iſlands in the *Adriatick* adjacent

jacent Seas, which extent of juriſdiction confined at firſt within *Thrace*, was acquired by the reputation of the Imperial City for his See, and the diligence and piety of their Biſhops in converſing and ſupplying the *Ruſſes* and other Nations with Paſtors and Miniſters in ſuch parts, which being conquered by the Turk, were forſaken by their Clergy, but ſuch is the poor and deſpiſed condition thereof, that there is little power of Chriſtian Religion. And though it be enlarged on the outward Members it is much impaired at home, by the Tyranny of the Turks (who educated their Children in Mahumetaniſm) on the one hand, and the Temptations of preferment unto Apoſtacy on the other, yet there are twenty Churches of them in *Conſtantinople*, and at *Salonica*, formerly *Theſſalonica*, thirty, which freely enjoy the profeſſion of their Faith.

To return to *Greece* thus Turkified, it will be an unneceſſary inſignificant labour to trouble the Reader with thoſe ſeveral names, and particular numerous Governments thereof in former ages, when it produced the moſt martial and learned men, whoſe Ghoſts would wiſh for annihilation at ſight of the diſgrace and ignominy of this their wretched poſterity, we paſs over the particular Dominions of old *Sicyon*, of *Eli*, *Meſſenia*, *Sparta*, *Athens*, now called *Selina* (and is but an ordinary Burrough taken by *Mahomet* the great in 1440. when ſome beauty of it remained,) and in a general manner, ſince all limits of them are confounded in this

barbarous ſubjection under the Grand Signior, and ſpeak of thoſe more noted places thereof, as they now paſs under the name of *Romania* and are Governed by one Vice-Roy as their ſupreme commander, termed Beglerbeg, of whom before a little; The next temporal Dignity in this Empire to the Prime or Grand Viſier, as commanding the ſtrength and flower thereof, as to its Martial and military Puiſſance.

The deſcription of *Romania.*

TURKEY ROMANIA. And now that we have for brevity ſake run over the Weſtern Provinces of this might, rich, and dreadful Potentate, we will in ſome ſort relate to the pleaſure of the Reader, many the particulars of thoſe good and ancient regions which at this day this *Saracenical* Nation termeth by the name of *Romania*, ſo called, either for the many *Roman* Colonies planted there, or for the former name of *Conſtantinople* called *Nova Roma.*

This *Romania* at this day is the moſt populous and delectableſt part of the Turkiſh Empire, and containeth the Provinces of *Thrace*, with its *Cherſoneſe*, vulgarly the ſtraight of *Callipolis*, *Macedon*, *Epire* now *Albania*, *Achaia* now *Livadia*, *Peloponeſus* now *Morea*, and the Iſlands of the *Archipelago.*

The Viciſſitudes of the Grecian Government.

Until the coming of *Cyrus* King of *Perſia* theſe Provinces remained in freedom, but of all others he firſt gave them the yoke of ſubjection. After him *Xerxes* the Son of *Darius*, with the ſucceeding Princes of *Perſia* did no leſs afflict them. When their turn was paſt, *Philip* King of *Macedon* acted his part, and united them

them under his own Dominion, until the dayes of *Perſeus*, whom the *Romans* ſubdued and ſubjected. But the *Roman* Empire being divided into the *Eaſt* and *Weſt*, the *Græcians* began their Empire under *Conſtantine* the Great, and Ruled honourably many ages, until the diſcent, firſt of the *Goths*, ſecondly of the *Bulgares*, thirdly of the *Saracens*, and laſtly of the *Turks*, who ſlew their Emperor; and ſeized on the Empire. Who at this day (except ſome reliques remaining under the *Venetian* Dominions) poſſeſs the greateſt part thereof, as well upon the continent as in the Iſlands. Thoſe that are under the *Venetian* juriſdiction (ſaith *Bellonius*) little differ, eſpecially in Religion, from thoſe that are tribuary to the Turk: for both ſorts being mingled, thoſe that are ſubject to the Turks, live like Turks; and thoſe that live under the *Venetians*, do as do the *Venetians*. So unſpeakable is the rudeneſs of either, that through all their Cities you ſhall not find a School to inſtruct their youth. Promiſcuouſly all ſpeak the Greek tongue corrupted from the ancient, but ſome better then others. The *Burghers*, ſubject to the *Italians*, ſpeak *Italian* as well as *Greek*, but the *Villageois* altogether *Greek*. And ſo the *Græcians*, which are ſubject to the Turk, in Cities ſpeak *Turkiſh* and *Greek*, the *Villageois* only *Greek*, and in places of traffique they borrow one from another, according as their buſineſs is with thoſe whom they Negotiate. And as they ſeem to differ

The Condition of the *Greeks*

in language, ſo do they in attire. Thoſe that ſerve the *Venetians* go apparelled like *Venetians*, thoſe that live under the *Turk*, like *Turks*. Both the Iſlanders & thoſe that live on the Continent as well in *Europe* as *Aſia*, although ſubject to *Turkie*, keep their ancient Chriſtian Faith. Long alſo they rejected the primacy of the Latin Church, and elected to themſelves Patriarchs, whom they acknowledge for their chief Paſtors, and appointed them ſeveral Sees. Whom not only the *Græcians* thus obey, but likewiſe all thoſe Provinces which follow the Greek Church, as *Circaſſia*, *Walachia*, *Bulgaria*, *Moſcovia*, *Ruſſia*, the better part of *Polonia*, *Mangrelia*, *Boſnia*, *Albania*, *Sclavonia*, ſome part of *Tartary*, *Sirtia*, *Croatia*, and generally all the Provinces of the *Euxine* Sea. In number they are four, *viz.* the Patriarchs of *Conſtantinople*, *Alexandria*, *Jeruſalem*, and *Antioch*.

The Greek Patriarks.

Of theſe, the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople* is the Primate, ſiteth in *Conſtantinople*, and chiefly moderateth over the *Caloieri* (ſo are the Greeks Prieſts termed) which reſide in Mount *Athos*, and generally over all Chriſtians, profeſſing the rites of the Greek Church throughout *Europe*; and for the Monaſteries of Mount *Athos*, and all other, diſperſed over Europe, he payeth the Turk yearly 12000. Ducats. The Patriarch of *Alexandria* moderateth in *Ægypt* and *Arabia*, and his dwelling place in *Memphis* and *Cair*, are not much inferiour to his of *Conſtantinople*.

The

The Patriarch of *Jeruſalem* abſolutely moderateth in *Judea*, and over all profeſſors of the Greek Religion throughout *Syria*. And muſt of neceſſity every year on the 15. of *Auguſt*, ſay Maſs in the Monaſtery ſcituated upon Mount *Libanus*.

The Patriarch of *Antioch* preſideth in the Monaſteries and the Greek Churches, which are in *Beritus*, *Tripolis*, *Haleb*, and other places of *Aſia*. And in theſe places, as in all other, the Turk permitteth the Chriſtians to uſe their conſciences freely, ſo they perform their due and accuſtomed tributes. To proceed.

THRACE hath on the Eaſt the *Euxine* Sea, the *Thracian*, *Boſphorus*, *Propontis*, and *Helleſpont*: on the North the Mount *Hæmus*, upon the Weſt the higher *Miſia*, and part of *Macedon*, on the South the *Archipelago*. It is a moſt Noble Province, cold, plain and admirably populous, ſtored with grain, pulſe and excellent wine, towards the Sea-ſide: but towards the up-land (lying more ſubject to cold) it is not ſo fertile nor wooddy. *Thrace* deſcribed.

In it ſtands many goodly Cities, *Philippolis*, *Nicopolis*, *Sophia*, *Hadrianopolis*, the former Regal Seat of the Turkiſh Kings, taken by *Amurath* the firſt, and beautified with a famous Seraglia. The Town is ſeated very pleaſantly, and was built by *Hadrian* the Emperour, whoſe name it retains, it is now the uſual retreat of this Grand Signior, and where at preſent he abides for its vicinity to his affairs in *Hungary*. *Pera* by others called *Galata*,

once peopled by the *Genoese*, as the Mart and Factory of that State, taken by *Mahomet* in 1653. but still repleniſhed with Chriſtian Merchants and Artificers. But above all other *Conſtantinopolis*, by Heaven erected to be the head of an Empire; as the onely ſeat which *Romans*, *Greeks*, and now the *Turks*, have choſen and reputed to be moſt commodiouſly ſeated, not for the Government onely of the Empire, but (as was before generally mentioned) of the whole World.

Deſcription of the famous City of *Conſtantinople*.

By its firſt Founders Name it was called *Byzantium*, and after many various turns of Fortune betwixt the *Perſians* and *Spartans*, it ſetled at laſt under the *Roman* Empire, by the Conqueſt of *Severus*, who ſacked it after three years ſiege, for their partaking with *Niger* his Competitor, but yet ſuch Majeſty remained in the very ruines, that *Herodian* reports, not without favour, and pity thereof, *Mirabantur homines utrum eorum qui primi Extruxerunt vel eorum qui deinceps ſunt demoliti vires eſſent potiores*; it was wondred at, whether the ſtrength of the Founders, or the deſtroyers was greateſt. From this Rubbiſh it was reared & re-edified by *Conſtantine* the Great, and finiſhed *May* 11. 331. and endowed with the Priviledges of *Rome*, and called for that reaſon *Nova Roma* for ſome ſhort times, but in memory of its raiſer, afterwards *Conſtantinople*.

It continued in this ſtate under the *Eaſtern* Empire 1100. years and upwards, till an unfortunate *Conſtantine* ſirnamed *Palæologus*, loſt it to *Mahomet*

met the Great, *A.D.*1453. by the baſe covetouſneſs of the *Citizens*, who would not for their own defence ſupply the Emperor with money. It is eighteen miles in compaſs, by which computation it is one third part bigger then *London* and the *Suburbs*, it is ſaid to contain ſeven hundred thouſand ſouls, and would be much more populous were it not for the plague, whoſe Triennial miſchief deſtroyeth multitudes; it is fortified toward the Land with three ſtrong and high walls, the one higher then the other, but towards the Sea with one only built with many Turrets, which ſtrongly flanker it. It yields a pleaſant proſpect afarre off, by reaſon of the many Groves and Gardens within it, but is meanly built, the Houſes but two ſtories high, ſome of courſe Stone, the reſt of Timber, rough and ungarniſhed; there are the in it 8000. Moſques or Churches, which are beauty of the City; the chief of them, and worthy of remarque is that of St. *Sophia*, which in elegancy, though not in bulk exceeds all the Fabricks of the World, the ſides and floor flagged with Marble, with a ſtately Porch at the entrance: add hereunto the Sepulchral Moſques of the Turkiſh Sultans, which are very ſumptuous, together with the Seraglio, built all of white Marble, round in form, and crowned at the top with ſhining golden Spires: not to omit the Moſque of *Solyman* the magnificent, one of the preſent wonders of the world. But *Conſtantinople* which is ſeated upon ſeven Hills and Mountains,

tains, as well as *Rome*, is better furnished with a Port and Haven, so convenient and advantagious to shipping, and so commodiously seated upon the *Thracian Bosphorus*, that Ships of all burdens, and with all winds may come close to the walls, the water is so deep. As to the Seraglio it standeth on one of the seven Hills in the North-east quarter of the City, like a Delta, two Angles of it aspect the Sea, which affords it a most pleasant speculation; the other is joyned by a wall to the City, towards which it hath one gate only; the other gates are never opened but for the private pleasure of the Grand Seignior, or his displeasure to be executed by the death of some of his Officers and Bashaws; it contains three Courts, one within another, the first is open to all persons, in the second sits the Divan or Courts of Justice, into which no man comes on Horse-back, the third is the Mansion and privacy of the Grand Seignior and his women, it is three miles in circuit, in which are contained many delightful Groves of Cypresses, intermixed with Plains, delicate Gardens, Artificial Fountains, Banquetting Turrets, and Prospect Rooms, with a most magnificent Audience-Chamber for Ambassadors, floored with embroidered Velvet, framed with Pearl and other Jewels. I have the longer insisted on this place, because as the Mistris of the World she draws all eyes upon her, and therefore it is fit to dress her in those Ornaments which she usually wears, and do become her greatness.

Cal-

Callipolis, is another famous portion thereof, ſeated on the Northen promontory of *Cherſoneſe*, the firſt City of note poſſeſſed by the Turks in *Europe*, taken in the reign of *Orchanes* in 1358. from whence they eaſily ſpread their conqueſt over the adjacent Provinces, it is the moſt convenient paſſage between *Europe* and *Aſia*, by reaſon of the ſafe harbour and good anchorage.

Next followeth *MACEDON*, bounded on the East with the *Ægean* Sea, on the Weſt with *Albania*, on the North with *Myſia ſuperiour*, and on the South with *Epyrus*, and *Achaia*; it is now principally divided into *Theſſaly* (a ſweet and delectable Country) *Macedon* ſpecially ſo called, and *Migdonia* by the Turks called *Jamboli*. It is a fertile Region incloſed with Hills, and near the *Jonian* Sea, plain and woody. That it was once the Empreſs of the Eaſt, it is well known, but at this day it is Turkiſh, and without any famous Cities, ſave in a piece of *Albania*. *Macedon* deſcribed

In it is nothing ſo memorable as the Mount *Athos*, or holy Mount. It is ſeventy five miles in compaſs, three dayes journey long, and a half a days journey broad, reſembling the ſhape of a man lying with his face upward, whoſe higheſt cone, alwayes covered with Snow, is ſeen thirty miles off at Sea. It is exceeding fertile in Graſs, Fruit, Oyl, and Wine. Long ago it was dedicated in honour of St. *Baſil* to the Greek *Caloieri*, and endowed with priviledges, which at this day it enjoyeth by the Turks good favour; that is to ſay, that no man neither *Græcian* nor Mount *Athos*. Priviledge of Greek Priests.

nor *Turk* may inhabit in this place except he be a Prieſt. So that their number in theſe days are about ſix thouſand, diſperſed into twenty four Monaſteries, ancient and warlike, built for fear of Theeves and Pyrats, although there be no ſuch great cauſe. In theſe Monaſteries are many reliques, which cauſe great concourſe of people, and they are ſtately built, and richly adorned. This was made a *Roman* province in the year of the World 3798. after the Captivity of their laſt King *Perſeus*, and was upon the diviſion of that Empire to Eaſt and Weſt, conſigned to the Eaſtern, to which it continued ſubjected till *Amurath* rent in from that Dominion by taking *Theſſalonica*; it is now governed by a Sanjack, who is bound to maintain a 100. horſe, and to find 400. more upon an Expedition.

Epirus. *Epire*, now *Albania*, was once a very famous Province bounded on the Eaſt with that part of *Greece* called *Ætolia*, on the Weſt with the *Adriatick*, on the North with *Theſſaly*, *Macedon*, and part of *Albania*, and on the South with the *Jonian* Sea; as witneſſeth *P. Æmilius*, it had in it ſeventy Cities now deſtroyed, and turned into ruines, and Villages meanly inhabited. For the moſt part it is woody and barren, but near the Sea fertile, and adorned with very beautiful havens.

This Country was formerly Famous for *Olimpias* the Mother of *Alexander* the Great; and *Pyrrhus* that great Captain among the *Romans*, but modernly as much renowned for the unexemplary

exemplary valour and conduct of *Scanderbeg* or Lord *Alexander*, who proved a ſcourge to the Turks in the reigns of *Amurath* the ſecond, and *Mahomet* the firſt, his bones after his death taken up, were worn by this rude enemy about them, as an Omen or pledge of ſucceſs and victory, whomſoever they engaged with. *Scanderbegs* renown.

Achaia, mentioned for its name in Scripture, is a very goodly region, as may be gathered by the goodly Cities, which therein once flouriſhed (*viz.*) *Delphos*, *Thebs*, *Athens*, *Megara* and many more now deſtroyed.

So is *Peloponeſus*; termed by *Pliny* the Bulwark of *Greece*. It yeildeth all things that man can deſire either for life or pleaſure, and although the ancient Cities be now defaced, yet is for quantity the beſt peopled part of *Greece*. It is now under the Turk, and counted the beſt Sanjackſhip in Turky, as bound to bring at the command of the *Beglerbeg* of *Greece* 1000. horſemen under his own pay. It is worth yearly fourteen thouſand ducats.

And ſo we paſs to the Iſles of the adjoyning *Ægean* Sea, which are many in number, ſaluting firſt the *Dardanels* or the two Block-Houſes, where all veſſels paſſing out of the *Helleſpont* into this Sea (which extends forty miles in length) are ſtaid three days for ſlaves and other prohibited mercandizes, or until information of any ſuch may come from *Conſtantinople*, they are exceedingly well walled, fortified and provided, they receive the cuſtoms, and *Dardanels*.

are

are the principal ſtrength of that City, as to the Mediterranean (as it is defended with the two black Towers, the Priſon for the Baſhaws and great perſons) at the mouth of the *Euxine*, where it joyns with the *Thracian Boſphorus*, the one of which is ſcited above *Conſtantinople*, on *Europe* ſide, and the other on the *Aſian* ſhore.

The *Ægean* Iſlands.

Theſe *Ægean* Iſlands are thus named *Samothrace*, *Thaſſus*, *Imbrus*, *Lemnos*, famous for the late conteſt in 1660. between the Turks and Venetians about it, *Eubœa* circuting a hundred and fifty miles in which ſtands the famous City known by the Gulf of *Negropont*, taken from the *Venetians* (to whom with other things it fell in the diviſion of the Eaſtern Empire unto the Latins) by Mahomet the Great in 1471. with the loſs of forty thouſand men. *Salamis*, *Ægina*, the *Cyclades*, in number fifty three, called now the Iſles of the *Arches*, encompaſſing *Delos*, and the *Sporades*.

Candia Deſcribed

Next we ſhould view the Iſles of the *Cretan* Sea, but they being inconſiderable we will mention onely *Candia*, in form extending Eaſt and Weſt, in length two hundred and ſeventy, and in breadth fifty miles, placed in the midſt of this Sea, the Natives ſpeak the Greek Language, and before the Turks put foot there, were governed by Latine Biſhops of the Church of *Rome*, to which the *Venetians*, then the Lords of it, do adhere.

It hath been attempted by *Selymus* the ſecond in 1571. when he conquered *Cyprus*, but

in

in vain, yet *Ibrahim* the Father of this Sultan, gained footing there ſome few years ago, and this is like when he ſhall be at leiſure, unleſs the *Venetians* improve his abſence in *Hungaria*, to carry it all; for of late he hath been very ſucceſsful there againſt all the power they can make, and is at preſent poſſeſſed of the better half, ſo that he muſt be reckoned as more intereſted then the *Venetian*. The *Jonian* Iſles as pertaining to their Seigniory, we are not obliged to mention here, though they ſtood in great danger of changing their Maſter.

From hence as we deſcend to the bottom of the Straights appears the Iſland of *Rhodes*, (which we muſt obſerve in our way to the Iſle of *Cyprus*, and ſo to *Egypt*) famous in former times for the potent reſidence of the Knights of the order of St. *John* of *Jeruſalem*, who deſerted by the Chriſtian Princes were forced to yeild it in the Grand maſterſhip of *Villerius*, to *Solyman* the Magnificent, not more to the ſcandal then detriment of Chriſtianity, but this is ſo notorious that I muſt not enlarge my ſelf. *Rhodes.*

Cyprus is ſituated in the *Syrian* and *Cilician* Seas, extended in length from Eaſt to Weſt two hundred miles, in breadth ſixty, the whole Compaſs reckoned five hundred and fifty, and diſtant from *Cilicia*, in *Aſia minor* ſome ſixty miles, it is a rich and fertile Kingdom, and hath in it twelve eminent Cities, but the moſt famous are thoſe two of *Nicoſia*, and *Famagueſta*, the laſt whereof was gallantly *Cyprus.*

main-

maintained by Signior *Bragadino* Governour of the Iſland, for the *Venetians*, who being in in deſpair of relief, yeilded the Town, and conſequently the Kingdom upon Honourable Articles to *Muſtapha*, *Selymus*'s General, but was barbarouſly flead alive, and all perſons of quality murdered beſides, onely a beautiful Lady reſerved for the luſt of the Grand Signior, (with ſome others Priſoners) in their voyage to *Conſtantinople* blew her ſelf, Ship and company into the Ayr, and worthily preſerved and tranſmitted her honour to after ages inviolate.

The barbarous conqueſt of *Cyprus*.

And ſo we paſs to *Syria*. *SYRIA* is bounded on the South with *Paleſtina*, and ſome parts of *Arabia*, on the Weſt with the *Mediterranean* Sea, on the Eaſt with the River *Euphrates*, by which parted from *Meſopotamia*, on the North with *Cilicia* and *Armenia minor*, from which it is ſeparated by the Mountain *Taurus*.

In the Survey of this ſpacious Country, the Reader is deſired to limit his ſight to the grand diviſion thereof into its ſeveral Provinces, wherein we muſt tranſitorily obſerve thoſe eminent Cities which are in the knowledge and diſcourſe of *Europe*.

Phœnicia deſcribed.

The firſt Province is *PHÆNICIA*, bounded on the Eaſt and South with *Paleſtine*, on the North with *Syria*, on the Weſt with the *Mediterranean* Sea. It is famous for the noble Cities (for their atchievements and Merchandiſe) of *Tyre* and *Sydon*, *Berytus* and *Ptolemays*, the laſt place of the Holy War conquelt: they were reduced to the Turkiſh Dominion, in 1489. but

that

that place which now moſt concerns us, is *Tripoli*, bravely and fertilely ſeated, once a Chriſtian Marquiſate (but in name ſo allied to that barbarous den of Theives in *Africa*, miſcheivous to trade, that I cannot but foreſtal its ſcite) and is upon that account the Metropolis of *Phenicia*: ſecondly, *Syria Propria*, bounded and adjoyning Northward to *Phenicia*, famous to our acquaintance, for *Laodicea*, as is mentioned in the *Revelations* of St. *John*; & *Antioch*, the place where Chriſtians were firſt ſo called, but now hath no name it ſelf either Turkiſh or Chriſtian to be called by, being ſunk into moſt obſcure and ignote Rubbiſh. It was finally loſt from the Chriſtians in 1381. when it came to *Saladine*, the Victorious Sultan of *Egypt* and *Damaſcus*. Thirdly, *Comagena* bordering upon *Euphrates* towards the Eaſt, with which it is watered, in it *Aleppo* ſcituated in the midſt betwixt *Tripolis*, *Beritus*, and *Alexandretta*, the three prime ports of *Turkey*, and on the further ſide it adjoyns to the *Perſian* Territories; it hath been of long time a factory of the Engliſh Nation, governed by a Conſul who maintain thence correſpondence with the Eaſt Indies, ſeveral goods coming over land upon Camels. The Engliſh are here well beloved, and our Tutelar or National Saint *George*, whoſe Sepulchre is feigned here, is had in great veneration; It over-looks by its ſcituation upon a Hill ſix Villages, to be ſeen no where elſe in theſe depopulated uncultivated places of this Empire, and is governed by a Baſhaw, which Dignity hath of late years been troubleſome to

Antioch.

Aleppo.

the Turkiſh State, as was mentioned in the following Treatiſe; It was taken in by *Selymus* the firſt, of which more preſently. Fourthly, *Palmyrene* a Country never conquered in the Holy-Land expedition, as the other parts were. Fifthly, *Cœleſyria* bounded on the Weſt with *Paleſtine*, whither we are next to paſs, and on the South-Eaſt, with *Arabia Deſerta*, and on the North with *Palmyrene*, remarquable for *Damaſcus.* the famous City of *Damaſcus*, and the Imperial and regal Seat of many Kings, who have been celebrated as well in Divine as humane writ. A moſt fruitful delightful place, even to ſurfeit, being ſtored with wine to ſuperfluity, for which reaſon, as is excellently obſerved, the vile Impoſtor *Mahomet* would not be perſwaded to come to it, leſt being inescated with its pleaſure he ſhould forget the buſineſs he came about; but his Succeſſors were not ſo abſtemious, it being the ſeat of one of his Caliphs, while *Babylon* or *Badgat* was re-edified. Here are many ingenuous workmen in moſt Arts, and hence come our Damask Satins and Linnens, wrought with curious Branches. It is now the Seat of one of the principal Turkiſh Baſhaws, and who is had in great eſtimation and beloved by the Grand Signior; It was held in modern times by the *Mamalukes*, who piece-meal recovered *Syria* from the *Tartars*, who under *Tamberlane* terribly ſacked this City; but in the year 1516. when the victorious *Selymus* the firſt diſcomfited *Campſon Gaurus* the *Egyptian* Sultan in the fields of *Aleppo*, this City fearing the

Spoyl

Spoyl and ruine thereof then very opulent by trade, ſet open their Gates, as did all the other Cities by their example. By means whereof the Turks became Lords of all this Country without any more blows, as they were next year of *Egypt* alſo, by their victory over *Tomombeius*, in whom periſhed the Name and Empire of the *Mamalukes*.

In our way to *Paleſtine* on the Holy Land, we muſt paſs over Mount *Hermon*, a ledge of Hills, which beginning Eaſtward run directly South, by which *Paleſtine* is bounded on the Eaſt, and parted from *Cœloſyria* and *Arabia Deſerta*, on the Weſt with the Mediterranean Sea, and ſome part of *Phœnicia*; On the North it is divided with the Hill *Anti-Libanus* from *Syria*, and on the South with part of *Arabia Petræa*; a moſt fertile Land even to admiration, flowing with milk and Honey, as it is elegantly expreſſed in the eight of *Deuteronomy*; by its former diviſion it was cantoned into ſix Provinces, 1. *Berea*, 2. *Iturea*, 3. *Galilee*, 4. *Samaria*, 5. *Judea*, and 6. *Idumea*, but made one Province of the *Roman* Empire, as it is now of the Turkiſh, the chief Cities were *Cæſaria*, *Samaria*, and *Jeruſalem*, of which a little muſt needs be ſpoken. Mount *Hermon*.

For to ſpeak nothing of ancient times, in the 73. year after Chriſt, *Jeruſalem* was taken and deſtroyed by *Titus*, with the ſlaughter and captivity of infinite thouſands. In the year 136. it was reſtored by *Ælius Adrianus*, new-named *Ælia*, and given in poſſeſſion to the Jews. In the

time of *Conſtantine* and *Helena* his Mother, it fell into the hands of the Chriſtians, and ſo continued until the dayes of our *Henry* the fourth, at which time it was again taken by the Sultan of the *Saracens*, and the Chriſtians clean baniſhment.

Holy land. In the year 1097. in a general Council for the delivery of the Holy-Land, the *Croſſed* Knights were inſtituted throughout Chriſtendom, and *Godfrey* of *Bulloygne* choſen General of three hundred thouſand footmen, and one hundred thouſand horſe. Theſe Knights did many famous acts; recovered the Land, inſtituted a Monarchy, and though ſometime with loſs, continued ſome defence thereof, until the year of our Lord 1517. and then was it overcome by the Turkiſh Armies; of the aforeſaid victorious *Selymus*, who at this day retain it in miſerable ſervitude under a certain Tribute or impoſition upon ſuch Chriſtians as are permitted to live here.

There are now therefore two or more Monaſteries, or Religious Houſes, where Fryars do abide, and make a good commodity of ſhewing the Sepulchre of Chriſt, and other Monuments unto ſuch Chriſtian Pilgrims as do uſe ſuperſtitiouſly to go in Pilgrimage to the Holy Land.

And ſo it reſteth peopled with men of divers Nations and Sects; as *Saracens*, *Arabians*, *Turks*, *Hebrews*, and Chriſtians: whereof ſome follow the Latine Church, ſome the Greek: as the *Græcians*, *Syrians*, *Armenians*, *Georgians*, *Neſtorians*, *Jacobites*, *Nubians*, *Marodits*, *Abeſſines*, *Indians*,

Indians and *Egyptians*, every one having their peculiar Biſhops, whom they obey. But to particularize a little further.

GALILIE upon the North is invironed with the ſteep hills of *Libanus* and *Antilibanus*, upon the Weſt with *Phenicia*, upon the Eaſt with *Cœloſyria*, and upon the South with *Samaria*, and *Arabia* the deſart. The ſoil is moſt fruitful, yielding all ſorts of Trees, and divided by *Jordan*: upon whoſe banks ſtand very many Towns and Villages, and ſo well watered, either with mountain Torrents, or Springs, that no part thereof lyeth unmanured.

The Country is the more famous, for that in it ſtandeth (amongſt the rude mountains) the ſmall Villages of *Nazareth*, the place of our Lords conception: And at this day, there is a ſmall Chappel arcbt and built under ground, whereinto a man muſt deſcend by ſtairs: Here (ſome ſay) the Angel appeared unto *Mary*, and foretold her that ſhe ſhould conceive and bring forth our Lord. *Nazareth.*

The Inhabitants are *Arabians*, ſhort and thick men, rudely apparelled, and weaponed with Bows, Swords and Daggers. In this Region likewiſe ſtandeth the Mount *Thabor*, whoſe North part is inacceſſible, and whereon our Lord was transfigured, according to the bleſſed Evangeliſt.

SAMARIA lyeth in a moſt delicate plot of *Paleſtine*, but in bigneſs not comparable to *Judea*, or *Galilie*. The ſoil is partly mountainous, partly *Samaria.*

champian, pleasant, fruitful, and very well watered with fresh and sweet water. The City is now ruinated: but as for pleasure and delight it was inferior to no other. It is scituated upon the side of a Hill, the eighth part of a mile, from whence a man may behold the ruines of a great Temple: whereupon (as men say) Christ sate, when he asked water of the *Samaritan* woman. But these are uncertainties, not to say fallacies.

Judæa. *JUDEA*, far excelleth any part of the residue of *Palestine*, and at this day enjoyeth its ancient fertility.

The tribe of *Juda* so named it, and in it, as in the rest of *Palestina* were very many worthy Cities, whereof *Jerusalem* was the chief seat of their Princes, the possession of the Patriarchs, Prophets and Apostles: the original place of our faith, and the glory of the Christian world. By the *Barbarians*, at this day it is called *Godz*, or *Chutz*: It standeth on an eminent place, as whereunto a man must always ascend.

Jerusalem.

Saint *Jeroms* opinion was, that it stood not only in the heart of *Judæa*, but in the very center of the world, as having *Asia* on the East, *Europe* on the West, upon the South *Lybia* and *Africa*, and upon the North, *Scythia*, *Armenia*, *Persia*, with the residue of the Pontique Nations.

What the glory hereof hath been, may be conjectured out of *Tacitus*, who reporteth, that in the beginning of the Siege, it contained two hundred thousand souls. At this day it numbreth

numbereth not above five thouſand inhabitants, although many Pilgrims daily reſort thither in a good conſcience, and for devotion ſake.

It was once ſtrongly and fairly walled, but now weakly, and therein it ſheweth nothing ſo famous as the Sepulchre of our Saviour Chriſt, whoſe Temple incircleth the whole Mount of *Calvary*, ſcituated upon a plain plot of ground, high, round, and open at the top, from whence it receiveth light: but the Sepulchre it ſelf is covered with an arcbt Chappel cut out of the main Marble, and left unto the cuſtody of the Latin Chriſtians. The Sepulchre of Chriſt.

Whoſoever is deſirous to ſee this Sepulchre, muſt pay nine Crowns to the Turk: ſo that this tribute is yearly worth unto him a very conſiderable revenue.

One hundred and eight foot diſtant from this Tomb, is the Mount (called the Mount *Calvary*) whereon our Saviour Chriſt was crucified by the treacherous Jews. In this place are many other religious Reliques. And the pilgrims which come thither, are alwayes lodged according to his own profeſſion; the Latines with the *Franciſcans*, without the City, by Mount *Sion*: the Græcians are lodged with the *Caloirean* Greeks, dwelling within the City by the Sepulchre: And ſo every other Nation, *Abeſſines*, *Georgians*, *Armenians*, *Neſtorians*, and *Maronites*, who all have their proper & peculiar Chappels. Thoſe Franciſcans, which follow the Latin Church, and are for the moſt part *Italians*, were wont to create the Knights of the Sepulchre, and

to give testimonial unto Pilgrims of their being there.

Without this City is the valley of *Jehosophat*, and therein the Tombs of the blessed Lady and Saint *Anne*. The territory adjoyning is exceeding fruitful in Vines, Apples, Almonds, Figs and Oyl: the mountains are no less stored with trees, wild beasts and spiceries.

Besides *Jerusalem*, here standeth *Bethlem*, now destroyed, and shewing nothing worth looking on, save a great and stately Monastery of the *Franciscans*, within which is the place where Christ was born. *Rama* is now likewise ruinated; the Arches and Cisterns which are now remaining, by the witness of *Bellonius* his own eye, are greater then those of *Alexandria*, but not so thick.

Gaza is now a Turkish Sanjackship: the soyl about fertile, and the inhabitants *Græcians*, *Turks*, and *Arabians*.

Idumea. *IDUMEA.* In holy writ, this Region is called *Edom*, and by other Authors *Nabathea*. Toward the Sea and *Judea* the soil is fertile, but toward *Arabia* desert and barren. Some say its inexpugnable for its desarts and want of water; yet is it stored therewith but hidden, and known to none but the Natives. Of old they were a turbulent, unquiet, and seditious people, and so at this day they are like to their villanous and roguish Neighbours the *Arabians*.

For further satisfaction of the Reader, be he pleased to refer himself to Doctor *Fullers* Holy Land, or Sir *Walter Raleigh*, who have amply discoursed on this Subject, by whose copious &

plea-

ſant ſtile and luxurious deſcription, the Ruines and preſent indigence and penury of this once flouriſhing and abundant Region are onely to be alleviated. And ſo we paſs forward.

ÆGYPT is beſt to be known as to its bounds, by its threefold definition and diviſion. Firſt, *Egypt* properly ſo called, extends it ſelf North upon the *Mediterranean* Sea, and part of *Idumea* to *Lybia* or *Marmarica*. Secondly, *Lybia* or *Marmarica* lying betwixt *Egypt* properly ſo called, and *Cyrene* or *Pentapolis*, ſo called for the five cheif Cities thereof, thirteen hundred miles long, and two hundred broad, reaches from *Lybia* to the greater *Syrty*, where it is bounded with the Kingdom of *Tunis* in *Africa*, which Kingdom with the other of *Algier*, by the *Ottoman* Family's intermedling with the quarrelling Princes thereof, though Mahumetans alſo, came at length to acknowledge no other Maſter but themſelves; the laſt King of *Tunis* named *Mahomet*, put in by Don *John* of *Auſtria*, whoſe ſuccour he craved, being ſubdued by the Turks, and carried Priſoner to *Conſtantinople* in the reign of *Selymus* the ſecond, about which time the Kingdom of *Algier*, in length 300 miles, but in breadth not conſiderable, was likewiſe reduced upon the ſame ſcore by the famous *Barbaroſſa*. Not to mention here ſome of the Iſles of *Barbary* which are ſubject to the Grand Seignior, as *Zerby*, infamous for the loſs of fifteen thouſand Chriſtians by ſlaughter at the taking, and afterwards by famine at the ſurprize and retaking of it by *Pial* Baſſa in

Egypt.

The kingdoms of *Tunis* and *Algier.*

in 1559. I am constrained to mention these parts of *Africk* here, for want of convenient reduction (in this brief Compendium) to their proper place.

Ægypt was vassalled to the *Mamalukes*, who seized it from the Eastern Emperors some three hundred years before *Selimus* the second, that ambitious and martial Sultan, wrested it from them in the fields of *Aleppo*, and extinguished the name and Empire as aforesaid: when *Cyrene* followed the same fortune, and submitted to the Turkish yoke. In this Province we must remarque *Tripolis*, assigned by *Charls* the fifth to the Knights of *John* of *Jerusalem* in lieu of *Rhodes*, but wrested from them by *Sinan* Bassa in 1577. since which it is become a Den of Pirates, as was mentioned before in the *Syrian Tripolis*.

In *Egypt*, passing over *Pelusium* and the famous *Damiata*, we will confine our view to *Grand Cairo*, once called *Memphis*, the Metropolis of *Ægypt*, which of all antient Cities hath lost little or nothing by the injury of time.

Grand Cairo described at large.

Grand Cairo was wrested from the *Mamalukes*, and their Sultan *Tomembeus*, by *Selimus* the first in the year of the Incarnation, 1517. after four bloody days spent before he could entirely possess himself of the City; It is nobly scited, and is between thirty and forty English Miles in compass, divided into seven burgs, built after the *Egyptian* manner, high, and of large rough stone, part also of Brick, the streets are narrow,

of

of late there are new buildings made of the Turkiſh faſhion, as the former decay, poor, low, much of Wood and Timber, except ſome modern ſtately Palaces of both Nations.

There are in it as are reckoned five and thirty thouſand Moſchets, four and twenty thouſand noted ſtreets, beſides lanes and turnings, ſome of thoſe ſtreets are two miles in length, ſome not half a mile, all of them every night are lockt up with a Door or Gate at each end, and Guarded by a Musketier, to prevent Tumults, Fire, or outrages.

Without the City on horſe-back there watch every night, to prevent any attempts of the *Arabs*, four Sanjacks, with each a thouſand Horſemen under his command, ſo that in all, as it is eaſily computable by the individual, Guardians of the ſtreets there watch every night no leſs then twenty eight thouſand perſons. Its Government.

The Caſtle is the place where the Baſhaw reſides, who is always one of the moſt avaricious and ravenous Viziers, ſent thither on purpoſe to ſqueeze and oppreſs the *Ægyptians*, and is frequently made a Spunge, to refund his wealth (with his life) into the grand Seigniors Exchequer, in which act the ſlaviſh *Ægyptians* can diſcern nothing but his juſtice, and are ſaisfied with it as their revenge: This Caſtle is founded upon a Rocky aſcent on the Eaſt ſide of the City, nor well repayred nor quite decayed; at the foot of this aſcent is a place half a mile

Mile long, wherein they ride the great horſe, and by that a little Houſe and Garden, wherein the old Baſhaws of this place, when diſauthoriſed till the coming of a new one, are keptuntil they are ſtrangled or reſtored to the Grand Signiors favour. Things of remarque and note herein, are firſt the River *Nile* running along the South of the Town to the Weſt, making as it leaves it, a little dainty Iſland, whoſe fertile and wonderful inundation begins conſtantly about the middle of *June*, and increaſeth to between eighty and a hundred days, then it abates, and by the end of *November* comes within its narroweſt banks, about a quarter of a mile broad: by reaſon of this flood they have four Harveſts in a year, the ground adjacent to this River being before a white Sand, without a ſprig of any green thing but two weeds (which carried to *Venice* makes the fineſt Chryſtal Glaſs) becomes a fat black mould, and bears Flax and Rice, with Sugar-Canes in abundance. Not to omit the number of Crocodiles that infeſt this River, nor the *Nilſcope* in the Iſle, where ſtands a Pillar with ſeveral marks, declaring the height of the flood all over *Egypt*. The next are the Pyramids ſo much famed in Hiſtory, and the granaries or ſtore-houſes which *Joſeph* built, three of which Pyramids ſtand twelve miles South-weſt of the City on the other ſide of the River, and are yet almoſt entire, their form is quadrangular, leſſening by equal degrees from a quarter of a mile, flat at bottom to a ſquare at top, a little more then

The famous River *Nile*.

The Pyramids.

then four yards angular; there are ſixteen or eighteen other Pyramids, ſome twelve miles to the Southward, but ruined extreamly. It rains not here but once in three or four years, ſo that bodies buried in that ſand, will keep without putrefaction, by reaſon no moyſture is near them but what is in themſelves.

Cairo ſubject to plagues, yet populous.

Plagues are here very rife in Winter, by one whereof eighteen hundred thouſand perſons died in ſix moneth, yet was the City preſently as populous as before, and continues ſo thronged that perſons of quality have one going before their Mules to make way for them, by bidding people make room, this is cauſed by the confluent multitude of the *Arabs*, and *Indians* too, that flock to the pleaſures and plenty of this place. There are a great many Chriſtians alſo, *Venetians*, *Dutch*, *Genoeſe*, and ſome *Engliſh*; the Ayr ſometimes in Summer, is like any ſweet perfume, and almoſt ſuffocates the Spirits, cauſed by the Wind that brings the Odours of the *Arabian* Spices in a full Flavour.

There is alſo a ſort of rare Horſes, but of tender hoofs, yet fit for that ſandy and ſoft ground, which will run four days and nights together without eating or drinking, and ſome *Egyptians* with a little provant, and leſs ſleep, their body being wound about with a Linnen, will ride them ſo upon buſineſs, to which this is the onely convenience, over

thoſe

The sandy playns about it.

those sandy deserts, where there is neither house or inhabitants, but the Theiving Murderous *Arabs*. For the direction of the way over those Vastitudes, (the wind blowing the Sand, and losing the track of any beaten way, and sometimes burying the Travellers in Sheats of it, unless they be wary,) are Pillars of brick, set up a mile distant from one another.

The Revenue that the Grand Signior receives from *Ægypt* amounts to eight hundred thousand pound sterling, a third part whereof comes onely clear to the Exchequer at *Constantinople*, all ariseth out of certain farms of the Land, belonging to the Crown, let out to the *Ægyptians*, the least farms pays two hundred pound a year. But the Bashaw hath other ways to make profit to himself, nor is any invention of oppression thought envious or dangerous; for the *Ægyptians* naturally effemenate, and having suffered under a lasting Tyranny, from slavery to slavery, are in no likelihood of endeavouring a revolt? the Grand Signior hath of them, no more then fourteen thousand enrolled in his pay, and that for show onely. The other two parts of the Revenue are disposed thus, the one to furnish the Expence of the Caravan and Pilgrimage to *Mecha*, whither the Grand Seignior sends presents yearly, especially a green Velvet Pall for *Mahomets* Coffin, and the other third part of the revenue towards the defraying the charges of the Government, *viz.* all Officers and publique services, besides that of the *Timariots*, who do theirs for their Tenure, and enjoy al-

The revenue of *Egypt*.

most

moſt a half of that Kingdom. It is a rare felicity for any Baſhaw of this place to eſcape with life, fortunes, and liberty, yet there are few of the Viſiers, who do not ambitiouſly affect this ominous Government.

The *Nile* deſcends from *Cairo* in a length of 360. miles to *Canopus*, now called *Roſetta*, where it imbogues it ſelf into the Sea: from whence by Land to *Alexandria*, the Port where goods are landed for *Cairo*, famous for its founder *Alexander* the Great, and for the Monument and Tomb of red Marble of its beautifier, *Pompey* the Great, likewiſe, and for its new Caſtle built ſince by the Turks, being their onely Emporium or ſcale of Trade in *Egypt*. *Alexandria.*

ARABIA TRIPLEX. The three *Arabia*'s, are likewiſe parcel of this Empire, which is a marvellous great country, included between two huge boſomes of the Sea, in manner of a *Peninſula*, *viz.* upon the Weſt and Eaſt with the *Arabian* and *Perſian* gulfs, upon the South with the Ocean, and upon the North with *Syria* and *Euphrates*. The deſcription of *Arabia.*

The Inhabitants are indifferently called *Arabians*, *Saracens*, or *Moors*: Thoſe are the true *Arabians* which live out of Cities in Tents, diſperſed over *Syria*, *Egypt*, and *Africk*, theſe give themſelves to feed Cattel, and droves of Camels. Thoſe which inhabit Cities, are called *Moors*, and were once of ſuch puiſſance, that they not onely ſubdued *Syria*, *Perſia*, and *Trogladitica*, but likewiſe *Ægypt*, a great part of *Africk*,

Africk, and almoſt all *Spain*, with the Iſland of *Sicily*, and the Kindom of *Naples*.

Two hundred years they kept poſſeſſion of theſe peeces, but of ſome part of *Spain* ſeven hundred, even until the days of our Fathers. And further, this accurſed generation at this day is not onely ſpread over all the Southern coaſt of *Aſia* : *viz. Perſia*, *Eaſt-India*, and the Iſlands of the *Indian* Sea, but likewiſe advanced with great proſperity unto divers wealthy Kingdoms, famous Cities, and worthy Mart-towns, over all the South Coaſt of *Africk*: under this people the *Turks* were firſt called into *Aſia* to bear Arms, and from whence iſſued out the ſwarm of this Locuſt *Mahomet*. The Diviſion is as followeth, firſt

The diviſion of it.

ARABIA DESERTA. This is a vaſt Country, full of Deſerts, yet well inhabited with populous and warlike multitudes, eſpecially toward *Euphrates*, and the mountains of *Arabia Felix*, whether Merchants reſort. The reſidue towards the Weſt is ſandy, by which if a man be to travel, he muſt have the ſtars for his guide, company for his ſafeguard, and proviſion for his diet, for otherwiſe he ſhall loſe his way, or ſurrender his goods to the Theeviſh *Arabs*, or ſtarve in the Deſert for want of food.

ARABIA PETREA. Towards *Syria* this is ſomewhat fertile, but ſmally commended for that property by the Ancients: For indeed it is exceeding barren, and wanteth neceſſary ſuſtenance, Wood and freſh Water. The memo-

memorable things herein are the Mountains at *Synay* and *Oreb*, upon the former whereof is at this day builded a Monaſtery of Chriſtians, following the Greek Church, and the onely receptacle or Inn for wayfaring Chriſtians: other place of relif is there none.

ARABIA FELIX is a very large province, better manured and watered then the other. It is adorned with noble Cities, and full of Villages, eſpecially toward the Sea ſide, where are many excellent places of Trade. The reſidue except the Sand, is made manurable either for feeding of Cattel or Camels, in which places live infinite ſwarms of divers Nations, by Grazing and Husbandry.

Arabia Petrea and *Deſerta*, were ſubdued by the Turks upon their firſt Conqueſt of *Perſia*, in the riſe of their greatneſs, but recovered by the *Mamalukes*, whoſe fortune they followed to the fatal period made by *Selymus* the firſt, when in his expedition to *Egypt*, they more annoyed him by falling in his rear, & terrified him in their night alarums, then all the Forces of their *Mamaluke* Maſters in the field; which deciding the title to *Egypt* included ſoon after the Dominion of thoſe Countries, the chiefs thereof being gained by money and promiſe of preferment, who yet nevertheleſs continue their petty Soveraignties, and rob and ſteal upon their own account, making no diſtinction betwixt Turk and Chriſtian. Its Hiſtory.

As for *Arabia Felix* it continued unconquered, till the *Turks* and *Portugals* quarrelled about it in 1538. when *Solyman* Baſſa ſent with a Fleet into

to the read Sea to maintain the Trade thereof, and to repress the *Persians*, assisted by the said Portugals, instead of taking in *Diu*, most safely surprized *Aden*, one of the chiefest Ports, when under colour of a friendly invitation, he had got the King thereof on board, where he hanged him, as he did the like to *Zibel* (and the King thereof) the Port of *Mecca*; nevertheless the Turks have but little command here, especially in the more in-land parts, and towards the *Persian* Gulf, where a Turk is generally hated and abhorred.

Assyria described.

ASSYRIA is bounded on the East with *Media*, West with *Mesopotamia*, South with *Susiana*, and North with part of *Turcomania*, by the last name of it as alluding to its great Original, called by the Turks *Arzyrum*, and though formerly the terrible name of a mighty Empire, and the first of the four, is now a mean Province of the Grand Seigniors Dominion: in it

Nineve.

was once seated the famous City of *Nineve* mentioned in Scripture, but the name and memory of it is now lost, only it is supposed that Mosul seated on the *Tygris*, and inhabited with a number of *Nestorian* Christians is risen out of its ruines. The Bassa of *Arzyrum*, the chief and strongest place in this Province, hath ten thousand *Timariots* under his Command to defend this Country, and to be ready for any other service.

MESOPOTAMIA is bounded on the South with *Arabia Deserta*, from which it is parted with the bending of *Euphrates*, on the East with the

the River *Tygris* and *Assyria*, on the West with *Syria*, and on the North with Mount *Taurus*, and *Armenia Major*, it is memorable for very little of modern note, the people prone to slavery, and accept of any Master that can win and wear them.

CHALDEA bounded on the East with *Susiana* a Province of *Persia*, on the West with *Arabia Deserta*, on the North with *Mesopotamia*, and on the South with the *Persian Bay*, and the rest of the *Deserta*. As to the account hereof we shall confine our view to *Babylon*, enlarged by *Nebuchadnezzar*, once accounted one of the worlds nine wonders, but since dwindled into oblivion, but recovered by the name first of *Seleucia*, and now of *Bagdat*: it was taken from the *Persians* by *Solyman* the Magnificent, and recovered from them under *Sophy Abbas* in 1625. and retaken from them by the noble and glorious *Sultan Morat* in 1640. when he intended to bury the name of the *Janizaries* in the rubbish of it, but left his own bones there like another *Alexander*: but the same vicissitude hath again restored it to this present Sophy; the people of those Regions as was hinted before, being patient and regardless of any power or Government whatsoever, as sure to suffer no worse, nor having ever experienced better. *Babylon* described.

TURCOMANIA (of which something more largely for the quality of the place) is bounded on the North with part of *Tartary*, upon the West with the *Euxine* Sea, *Cappadocia* and *Armenia Minor*, on the East with *Media* and the *Turcomania.*

Caſpian Sea, and on the South with *Meſopotamia* and *Aſſyria*, it is called *Turcomania* from the Turks, who from hence made their firſt fortunate expedition and irruption to the conqueſt of *Perſia*, and ſpread themſelves afterwards into other Regions. The inhabitants are now generally Chriſtians, priviledged by *Mahomet* the Great, and ſpeak a language of their own, yet are their manners very barbarous, given much to Tillage, and very induſtrious; they are of late well ſeen in Manufactures, eſpecially in rich Tapeſtries, Grograins, and watered and unwatered Chamlets, with which they Traffick in all places of Turkey.

Armenia Major. The chief Provinces of this Territory, are *Armenia Major*, conquered by *Selymus* the firſt in 1515. after the fatal *Calderan* field, the day whereof was called by the Turks Dooms-day, againſt *Hiſmael* the *Perſian Sophy*, whoſe Predeceſſor *Uſſan Caſſan* took it from a Chriſtian Prince thereof; and fully ſetled by *Amurath* the third, by the ſtrong Garriſon of *Van*. 2. *Colchis*, reduced by *Uluzales* the famous Turkiſh Sea Captain, ſent into the *Euxine* Sea by *Amurath* in 1579. and made ſubject to a Beglerbeg. 3. *Iberia* with the reſt, formerly ſendatory to the *Græcian*, as before to the *Roman* Empire, by the ſame *Amurath* (who purſued his Father *Solymans* deſign) was partly united to his Scepter, but the *Georgian* Princes by the near aid of the *Perſians* have yet a part. 4. *Albania* conquered by the Great Cham of *Tartary*, but ſince blended with the other *Georgians* into

The *Chaldean* fields

Turkiſh

Turkiſh ſlavery. This *Turcomania*, though it were the firſt place of the Turks extraction, yet it was the laſt of their conqueſt, beſides that it is ſtrangely Chriſtian, and is the laſt Province that is aſſured and ſetled under their Dominion.

Georgia deſcribed.

GEORGIA, by the *Barbarians* termed *Gurgiſtan*, comprehendeth part of the ancient *Iberia*, with part of the great, *Armeny*, and peradventure *Atrapatia*. Upon the Weſt lyeth *Mengrelia*, upon the North *Zuiria* (once *Albania*) upon the Eaſt the middle *Atropatia* (now *Sirvan*) upon the South that part of the greater *Armenia*, which now is called *Turcomania*.

For the greater part it it covered with Mountains, Woods, and Thickets, and in that regard inconquerable for the difficulties of the mountainous paſſages. It is notwithſtanding fertile, and adorned with many large places and villages, from whence ariſe many famous Rivers, as *Cirus* and *Araxis*, ſpringing from the Mountain *Taurus*, and running thorough the whole Province, until at laſt, it diſgorge it ſelf into the *Caſpian* Sea.

The Inhabitants are termed *Georgians*, of St. *George*, whom they advow their patron and advocate. For they are Chriſtians according to the Greek Church, with ſome ſmall difference. They are very populous and warlike, ſtrong of body, and valorous in fight, even until our times maintaining their liberty in the midſt of the Mahumetans, ſometimes following the fortunes of the Turks, ſometimes of the *Perſians*. But at this day, they have not onely loſt their wonted liberty, but alſo many For-

treſſes and Cities, as *Teflis*, *Lori*, *Cliſca*, *Gori*, and *Tomanis*, and withal ſome of them have imbraced the Turkiſh infidelity.

The City of *Tauris*. I muſt here inſert the Noble City of *Tauris* in *Media*, within that Province belonging to the *Perſian*, being the utmoſt extent of the Turkiſh Dominion Eaſtward, and the bound thereof, whither being arrived we will return back to *Conſtantinople* by the way of *Aſia minor*, called *Natolia*, and after this ſpacious perambulation, ſit down and compute in an intire ſum, the whole extent of this dominion, for the reader happily may be tyred with ſo tedious a journey.

Aſia Minor. NATOLIA. That which the Turks at this day term *Natolia* or *Turcia major*, once *Aſia minor*, comprehendeth the Provinces of *Pontus*, *Bithinia*, *Aſia* it ſelf, *Licia*, *Galacia*, *Pamphilia*, *Cappadocia*, *Cilicia*, and *Armenia* the leſs; and in theſe Provinces of antient times flouriſhed the States and Kingdoms of the *Troyans*, of *Methridates*, of *Creſſus*, of *Antigonus*, of the *Paphlagonians*, of the *Galathians*, of the *Cappadocians* and *Phrigians*; All which at this day are not ſufficient to ſatisfie the ſingle ambition of the Turkiſh Tyranny. The Inhabitants for the moſt part are Mahometans, and naturally *Turks*, of ſimpler nature then the Turks of *Europe*, and nothing ſo cruel as the Renegado Chriſtians. Yet are there many Chriſtians among them in many of theſe Regions, following the Rites of the Greek Church. Among theſe Turks there is no acknowledgement of Superiority, Blood, or Nobility, but all are equal ſlaves to the Grand

The condition of the people.

Signior,

Signior, over whom he appointeth Beglerbegs and Sanjacks. They are either a kind of idle or loſty people, for they are ſmally induſtrious, and were it not for their ſlaves, their grounds would generally lye unmanured.

Pontus and *Bithinia* are now united under one name, and called *Burſia*. Here once raigned the Great King *Methridates*; and here ſtood the famous City of *Chalcedon*, *Nicomedia*, *Apamia*, *Pruſia Niee*, and *Heraclea Ponti*. Its Cannons.

Aſia propria, now *Sabrum*, is a particular Province of *Aſia minor*, and containeth in it many famous Provinces, as *Phrygia major*, and *minor*, *Caria*, *Myſia*, *&c.* in *Phrygia minor*, ſtood that Noble City of *Troy*, famous at this day (ſaith *Bellonius*) an eye witneſs, for its very ruines of Walls, Gates, Circuit, and Marble Sepulchres, found upon the way without the Walls.

Pamphylia now *Caramania*, is one of the ſeven Sangjack-ſhips, with 8000 ducats of yearly revenue. In this Country, as alſo in *Cilicia*, are woven thoſe fine cloaths which we call Chamblets, watered and unwatered. They are made of the hair of Goats, ſo fine and white as no ſilk can ſurpaſs them in thoſe two properties.

Cappadocia now *Amaſia*, is a goodly Country, and the ſeat of the Turks eldeſt Son. In it are many goodly Cities, as *Trapezond*, once the ſeat of the *Commeni*, Emperors of *Trapeſond*, whoſe name and progeny, *Mahomet* the ſecond utterly extinguiſhed. The Empire of *Trapezond*.

Cilicia, now part of *Caramania*, is a good Country; the Inhabitants are given to pasturing of Goats for lucre of their fleece, of which they make their Chamblets; but otherwise neither given to fishing, Navigation nor Husbandry. At the foot of mount *Taurus* (saith *Bellonius*) are divers small Villages, and excellent pastures about them, which for the fertility thereof should seem to be one of the Turks Races; for from thence he culleth out every year 600 horse of service, which they highly esteem, and name *Caramani*.

Armenia Minor, is a better soil, and more populous then *Cappadocia*, round about incircled with tall, huge, broken and woody mountains. These Provinces are of *Natolia*, governed by a *Beglerbeg*, the chief next to him of *Romania*, but his forces are not esteemed so much for their service as the Europeans.

The whole is bounded on the East with the River *Euphrates*, by which it is parted from *Asia* the Greater, on the West with the *Thracian Bosphorus* and *Hellespont*, by which divided from *Europe*, on the North with the *Euxine* Sea, and on the South by the *Rhodian*, *Lydian*, and *Pamphilian* Seas, so that it is almost a demy-Island or Peninsula. To omit for brevity sake the Provinces of the Isles, among which are reckoned as chief, *Samos*, *Lesbos*, *Tenedos*, and principally *Rhodes*, an Island an hundred and forty miles in compass, the City whereof, taken by *Solyman* the magnificent on Christmas day 1522. is reputed one of the most impregna-

The Island Rhodes.

ble

ble Fortreſſes the Turk poſſeſs, as is *Famagusta* in *Cyprus*. It is now inhabited by Turks and Jews which were baniſht out of *Spain*.

As to the ſtory of *Anatolia*, it chiefly depends upon the two Empires of *Conſtantinople* and *Trabezond*, and the Kingdom of *Caramania*, ſubdued by *Bajazet* the ſecond, ſince which time every parcel thereof became united to the *Ottoman* Dominions. It was once the moſt flouriſhing part of the world, but hath loſt ſince ſome few Centuries, no leſs then 4000 Cities, partly by earth-quakes, which are frequent here, and partly by the ſloath and natural lazineſs of the Turks, who buſie themſelves in nothing but their luſt and luxury, ſo that little Trade is ſtirring here. But their Horſe bread here retain their native excellency, and are reputed the beſt, the European Horſe-men are like ſo eſteemed. And in theſe two conſiſt the chief power and ſtrength of the Turk.

So that we have ſeen under the Empire of the Turk is comprehended the better part of the antient three-fold diviſion of the earth, which we will recapitulate and repeat for the Readers memory. He holdeth in Europe the whole Sea coaſt, which from the borders of *Epidaurus*, ſtretches it ſelf to the mouth of *Tanais*; whatſoever lyeth between *Buda* and *Conſtantinople*, and from the *Euxine* Sea to the banks of *Savus*, is his. In that perambulation is contained the greater part of *Hungary*, all *Boſnia*, *Servia*, *Bulgaria*, *Macedon*, *Epire*, *Greece*,

The ſum of the Turkiſh dominions

Greece, *Pelloponese*, *Thrace*, and the *Archipelago* with the Islands. He holdeth in *Asia* and *Africk*, all that is between *Velez de la Gomera* and *Alexandria* in *Egypt*, between *Bugia* and *Guargula*, between *Alexandria* and the City *Siene*; and from the City *Suez* as far as *Swachen*. The hugeness of this territory may be imagined by the circuit of some of the parcels: *Palus Meotis* (wholly his) spreadeth it self a thousand miles into the land; two thousand and seven hundred miles do hardly incompass the *Euxine* Sea. The coast of the Mediterranean Sea (as much as is subject to him) containeth in circuit eight thousand miles. *Egypt* wholly his, is esteemed three thousand and two hundred miles; so far from *Derbent* upon the *Caspian* Sea to *Aden* upon the Red Sea; and from *Balsara* upon the *Persian* Gulf to *Tremessen* in *Berbary*, is accounted little less then four thousand miles. In the Sea, he is Lord of the most noble Islands of *Cipres*, *Eubea*, *Rhodes*, *Samos*, *Chio*, *Lesbos*, and many other in the *Archipelago*, of which before.

CHAP. IV.

Of their Militia.

The Infantry.

THeir Infantry consists of two sorts. First, such as are levyed upon particular Cities, more or less according to the nature of the Expedition, and proportionable to their abilities, from whence many Christians are frequently sent,

ſent, both Turks and Chriſtians well cloathed and armed, and exerciſed a moneth before they march without the Cities where they are raiſed: The ſecond the *Janizaries*, who make 50000. which are Chriſtian Children taken from the Northern parts of *Europe*, and entred into the Grand Seigniors books, and bred in the Seraglio and other places as common ſervants till twenty two years old, and then are muſtered and diſciplined for ſervice (but now Turks are liſted among them very frequently) theſe are the flower of the Army, and are never disbanded, but when old, are put into Garriſon. The horſe conſiſt of the Spahioglans, whoſe juſt number is 32000. and are the conſtant guard of the Emperors perſon at home and abroad; and the *Timariots*, who hold lands by ſerving the Sultan in his Wars, and according to the value of their Timar or Farm ſending three, four or ſix horſes, but not all for ſervice, their total number with the Tartar, whoſe aid of 60000. horſe is alwayes to be in a readineſs may be 300000. of which number the Kingdom of *Algier* affords 40000. that of *Tunis* 30000. *Tripoli* 10000. we may not reckon proportionably, ſo with the other Provinces, becauſe horſe are here in abundance. Their Cavalry.

When a War is proclaimed, and a general Rendezvous appointed, the ſeveral Baſſa's and Governours of Provinces draw their forces together, ſummoning the Timariots to do their ſervice aforeſaid, but many of them with ſome Janizaries and Voluntiers have leave to march before

fore to the ſaid Rendezvous. When theſe Baſhaws begin their march, publick proclamation is made to hang all ſuch Janizaries as ſhall be found behind thoſe Forces upon their march; when they are rendezvouſed, and upon the Expedition, the Baſhaws do not go all in company, but ſetting forth about an hour one after another, draw out their Troops without confuſion, not in any ſtrict order of Rank and File, as near no enemy.

The Turks diſdipline in marching.

Yet though there is not the diſcipline of poſture, their Officers commands are in all other things carefully obeyed; 'tis a wonder to ſee ſuch a multitude, as commonly they march with, ſo clear of confuſion, violence, want, ſickneſs, or any other diſorder, there being alwayes plenty of good Bisket, Rice and Mutton carried with the Army.

The Baſhaws and great Commanders have with them three or fourſcore Camels, beſides ſix or ſevenſcore Carts to carry the Baggage, & when the General takes horſe, he hath five or ſix Coaches covered with cloath of Gold or rich Tapeſtry to carry his wives, ſome have with them twelve or ſixteen, the leaſt ten, who when they enter the Coach, there are men placed on both ſides, holding up a row of Tapeſtry to cover them from being ſeen by the people, although they were muſled after the Turkiſh manner that nothing but their eyes appeared. Beſides theſe women, each Baſhaw hath as many or rather more pathick Boys which they uſe for Sodomy, whom they prefer as the

The Turks Sodomy.

greater

greater ſatisfaction before their Wives, which are uſed moſtly to dreſs their meat, to waſh, and for to honeſt their unnatural luſt.

The Boys are generally of fourteen, ten or nine years old, and are uſually clad in velvet or ſcarlet with gilt Scymetars, and bravely mounted with ſumptuons furniture, and each of them a Souldier is appointed, who walks by his bridle for his ſafety.

When the Prime Viſier departs upon any expedition out of *Conſtantinople*, he wears in his Turbant a long broach Feather, which none but the Grand Signior uſually wears beſides himſelf, upon this only occaſion; He is accompanied on his way with all the Grandees of the Court, who preſent him with Gifts, as doth the Sultan himſelf in veſts and ſuch like commodities, to beſtow upon merit or other occaſions for his Magnificence. The martial muſick they have is none of the beſt, but will ſerve ſufficiently to confound the ſenſes, and deafen the ears to any other clamour, being a kind of horſe Kettle Drum, which with ſome braſs diſhes and wind Inſtruments, carried by fellows on Horſe-back, ride a little before every great Commander, and noiſe along the journey. The great rendezvous when he marcheth againſt Chriſtendom is always appointed in that fatal playn, of *Theſſaly* famous for the battels of *Pharſalia*, between *Pompey* and *Cæſar*, and *Philippi* between *Auguſtus*, and *Caſſius*, and *Brutus*. As for their armes which hath been touched

Their Military muſick.

be-

before ſomething more particularly is to be ſaid of them. They differ from thoſe of the Europeans very much, yet their Harquebuze is ſomething like our Caliver, their Scymetar a crooked flat Back-ſword, good at Sea upon Boarding, or among Ropes, but in the field fight is much inferior to the Rapier; but conſtant uſe (for it hath been always the eaſtern weapon) gives them advantages, more then we can ward.

Their Arms.

They uſe likewiſe an Iron Mace, either for ſtroke or hurle, and in this they have a peculiar excellency, being brought up in it from their youth. Bows and Arrows are no leſs skilfully then frequently uſed, with which they do moſt miſcheif, though the Arrows be no bigger then childrens, but the ſtrength of their bows doth the Execution. Beſides theſe they carry other, almoſt all ſorts of weapons with them, as they do the like when they travail, firſt their Girdle is charged with three or four Piſtols, then on either ſide a knife as long as a mans arm, like a skean, but not ſo broad, with another for ordinary uſes, tuckt to his Coat, a harquebuze on his ſhoulder, on his thigh a Scymitar, on the one ſide of the ſaddle pummel a petronel, on the other a ſtrange Sword, the blade being hollow and fourſqare, by that either an Ax or an Hungarian Mace, or both, and at his back Bows and Arrows, ſo that he looks like a Porcupine, with weapons in every part of his body. The great Ordinance each Souldier carries in his pocket in peices to the field or Leagure, where it is caſt.

Bows and Arrows.

As

As to their Quarters, which are always in the fields and the open Ayr, but what their Tents sometimes defend, all these arms are fastned to their Bridles, which are imbellished with brass gilt bosses, and that is tied about the Tree, or otherwise made sure to the ground, where he rests, that being cared for, he spreads a blanket, whereon he first eats, and then sleeps in his cloaths, with his Saddle for his Pillow; Armour they have not had long, but now they begin to use it frequently, the agility and celerity of men and horses in offending, equalling the defensive part. To three Horsemen a Wagon is allowed to carry their other necessaries. Their Quarters.

When they approach an enemies Country, they march in rank and file with wonderful exact order and silence, whereby commands are readily heard and obeyed, there being severe punishment for them that by disorderly and licentious behaviour, disturb their companies. And for the better security of this discipline, and to prevent straggling, they are always provided of Bisket, dry Flesh, and store of Rice, with a sort of course butter, so as in the greatest desolate places and Countries, they have plenty of necessaries, which bringes them in heart to the encounter. Their provision on their march.

When they are neer an engagement, the horse (which is one of their chief Military politiques) encompass all their Infantry, except the Janizaries (whose courage and bravery they confide in) it the rear in form of a half Moon Their Battel.

or

or Crescent, which figure they esteem propitious. Those Horse have order not to meddle with the enemy, but onely to drive and necessitate the foot upon the enemy, till they have pierced through their Battaliaes if possible, and if they chance to recoyl, to hold them to the slaughter, till they have wearied and dulled the enemies Swords, and then the Janizaries and they together fall with fresh fury and vigour upon them, and this serves for all the advantages of Military Policy, and quickens his multitudes, through despuration, to high and gallant services.

Their manner of fighting.

Their Seiges & Leagures.

In matter of siege and Leagures, they are not altogether so expedite and understanding as the Europeans, and what ever they have attained to in matter of raising or ruining Fortification, hath been taught them by Fugitives and Renegadoes; the use of the Cannon they have learned very well, but yet it is not so familiar to them, for not many Matrosses are to be found in their Country, the *Persian* their next Neighbour to this day standing six or eight yards off when he gives fire to those pieces.

Their bold approathes.

Their number serves them for shelter and defence, for as soon as they have raised a battery, and made a kind of breast-work, with some Mountains in it to overlook the place besieged, they mak their approaches in spight of the Bullet, and strive to fill up the Trenches with their bodies, if they cannot do it with other matter, and when once a Breach is made, it is either a Souldiers death there in honour, or a Dogs in the

the Camp for an Officer to retreat, or give over the assault while commanded.

Yet they can use Galleries, as they do mines and other devices of conquest, but neither with that art or success as the Christians, but that is equalled with their diligence and undefatigable working, and obstinate resolution of carrying the Town at last. And their patient suffering of all extremities upon such a bent is almost incredible, and the like they do in the defence of their own.

But the Turk puts not himself to much charge of Garrisons, unless Frontiers and maritime Towns, (which are not yet so strictly guarged and maintained as with us) for he supposeth himself Master of the field, and that upon any sudden rupture he is able to march with a sufficient Army to their relief (the places being provided for such a competent time) besides, after the conquest of a Country, he divides it, as was partly said before, into so many Timars or Farms, for which the several possessors are bound always to be in a readiness, with two, three, or six Horses, according to the value of the said Lands, who do so awe the Country, (the Nobility and better sort being either transplanted and destroyed, and some Rusticks onely left to till and manure the ground,) that seldom happens any revolt meerly by them, the *Morlacks* excepted, whose poverty suited not with their Lordly Greatness, nor was able to maintain it among

The Turk always Master of the field.

among so many natural wants and indigencies.

Their Naval force.

As to their Naval force it consists of three Fleets, the one (like our *Newcastle* Traders) sails the *Euxine* and *Mediterranean* Seas, either toward the *Moscovite*, *Circasse* or *Cossack*, and thence bringing slaves, with honey, wood and wax, &c. returns to *Constantinople* about *August*, and thence sails to *Alexandria* to barter those commodities for Flax, Sugar, Tapestry, Sherbets (made of several dry preserved fruits, as Apricocks, Peaches, Citrons, &c.) Corn, Rice, and other Egyptian traffick, and returns with Tribute (guarded with a Fleet for fear of the *Malta* and *Florentine* Galleys which lye in weight for the straglers) in *January* back to *Constantinople*, which is as the Nursery of his Seamen. The second is his Fleet of War, built and equipped in the Streights, and made only for fight. The third, the Barbary men of War, which exercise Piracy over all Christendom.

Of late for fear of the said Galleys it comes by Land in Caravans.

This last is his chiefest strength, though not so much and so soon at command as the other; for they have long pretended an independance on the Grand Seignior, when appealed to from those they have robbed, which he likewise dissembles, so that sometimes they prefer their own designs before his quarrel; but generally they comply with his Orders.

The Pyrats of *Alger*, &c.

Notwithstanding to give the world to believe that they are exempt from the Turkish jurisdiction, and to be reputed free Pirats, for fear

of

of reſtoring their prizes, they will not come to Anchor under the reach of any of the Forts or Caſtles belonging to the Grand Signior, but if they have occaſion to ſtay for a wind or other convenience, ride at anchor for a while out of danger of any ſhot; which perſonates the exemption very finely.

They are notwithſtanding ill ſupplied with Seamen, for beſides Renegadoes they have very few skilful Sailors; theſe Renegadoes in the Barbary Fleet have taught them to ſail into the North-weſter-moſt parts of *Europe*, they having ſometimes landed in *Cornwal* by night, and carried away ſome captives out of their Beds; they have frequently infeſted *Spain* in the ſame manner, and now they have proceeded ſo far that they roave as far as *New-found-land*, and have taken prizes there, and in one of the Ships a very handſom Engliſh woman going for *Virginia*, who was preſented by the Captain to the Grand Signior, and is by report at preſent in his Seraglia, and one of the Sultanaes. *The Turkiſh ſtore of Seamen.*

The Seamen are generally very civil and courteous, as they are obedient and diligent, and not irreligious and prophane, as too many of our Mariners are, and rough and quarrelſom beſides; their terms of Navigation are altogether *Italian*, from whoſe commerce they borrowed it, themſelves having formerly few or no Ports to the Sea.

Their own Ships called Caramuzaels are moſt part great Ships, with Poop and Fore-caſtle very high, and will carry ſeven or eight hundred *Their veſſels.*

paſſengers, but like Portugal Galleons are ſlow of ſayl, not fit for ſervice in fight, and are ſoon overſet by any ſudden tempeſt, or ſtormy weather. The beſt Ships therefore they have are ſuch as they have taken from the *Hollander*, who to ſave their lives and liberty, which the Turks promiſe upon a preſent ſurrender, will part with their Ships and Goods, which turns to the uſpeakable prejudice of other Chriſtians trading in the Levant, eſpecially the *Venetians*, who have often times encountred the Turks at Sea within theſe few years.

Holland prize..

This makes the Pyrates of *Algiers*, *Salley*, and *Tripoli* to have ſuch a contemptuous opinion of that Nation, and always apt to flinch from ſuch terms of peace as are every-foot agreed on between with them; but with us they care not how little they quarrel, for that they ſeldom get any thing by the bargain, but frequently come by the worſt, a ſingle Merchant man having ſpoyled two of their beſt men of War, and ſlain almoſt all their men, with their Captain Baſhaw of *Rhodes*, about which a great difference was like to have ariſen in the year 1634. by a complaint made againſt the Engliſh at the Port.

An Engliſh exploit.

It were to be wiſhed therefore that the Turk were no more formidable at Land then he is like to be at Sea, of which the *Venetians* have continued Maſters, and by their annual eſpouſal have wedded it to their Fortune and Glory, which hath in ſeveral triumphs adorned that maiden and little republique, againſt the huge

and

and bulky mightineſs of this Empire.

The Turkiſh Arſenals for ſhipping are four; the firſt is at *Pera*, and conteained thirty three docks or manſions for ſo many Gallies: The ſecond is at *Callippolis*, and contained twenty, both under the charge of the high Admiral and his Servitors: The third, is at *Suez* at the Red Sea, containing twenty five manſions, and the fourth and laſt, at *Balſaro* in the *Perſian* Gulf, conſiſting of fifteen Gallies, and theſe two laſt under the charges of the *Beglerbegs* of *Balſaro* and *Cairo*; but of late years there are double the number built at *Pera* and in *Callipolis*.

The *Turkiſh* Arſenals for ſhipping.

CHAP. V.

Of their Government Civil and Eccleſiaſtick.

THE Court is commonly ſtiled by them *Capy*, viz. the port, wherein are many great Officers, partly ſpoken of before, and whoſe ſervices are onely deſtinated to uſes within the *Seraglio* (too large to be here deſcribed further then what was mentioned in the Deſcription of *Conſtantinople*;) and they are for the moſt part Eunuchs, with their Table of under Eunuchs. But without the Seraglio are alſo diverſe honourable Offices for the Government of the Empire, the chief whereof is their Muſti or Pope, who onely hath plenary power to interpret their Law and Alcoran. In the ſecond Rank, are their *Caldeleſchers*, viz. Chief Juſtices, and they have

the hearing and deciding of all temporal ſuits between party and party. In ancient times they were but two, one in *Rum Ili* or Europe, the other in *Natolia*: but *Selymus* the third, added a third equal in authority to the other two, over the Provinces of *Egypt*, *Syria*, *Arabia*, and part of *Armenia*. Theſe chief Judges have juriſdiction over all inferiour Juſtices, or Caddies in particular Provinces, and by them are nominated, but confirmed by the Grand Signior himſelf. After the *Cadeleſchers*, followeth the Vice-Roy *Baſſaes* (Counſellours of eſtate) whoſe number is uncertain; in old time three or four, but of late twelve. The Preſident of theſe the Turks term Vice-Roy Azem, and in truth is a perſonage of great dignity and authority in managing the affairs of the State, as the man with whom the Grand Signior doth only communicate his weightieſt intentions, and ſecreteſt deliberations.

The great Officers of the Empire.

In the next place appear the Beglerbegs (maſters *del Campo*) the chief whereof is he that is tearmed of *Romania* or *Græcia*: The ſecond is the Beglerbeg of *Anatalia* or *Aſia*. The third is the *Denizi* Beglerbeg, that is to ſay, the Lord high Admiral. And theſe three Beglerbegs have equal place and authority with the former Baſſaes in the *Divano*, or place of publick audience.

Major Generals.

Before the laſt war of *Perſia*, this Empire was under-governed by forty Beglerbegs, who likewiſe had under them two hundred and ſeventy Sanjacks (but ſince thoſe times this number hath

been

been much augmented) *viz.* in Europe reſided ſeven, in Africk 4. in Aſia 29.

His yearly revenue, without counting his Timars, by them he hath 30000 horſe alwayes in pay (which are farms held as by Knights ſervice, and remove the wonder his Revenue is ſo little) is eſtimated at fifteen Millions of Ducats.

As to the Capy or Port, by which is inſinuated the ſafety and Harbour of ſuch as addreſs themſelves to the Grand Signior, the remarkable thing beſides the Emperors places of pleaſure which are hinted in the other part is the *Divan* or places of Judicature, where the Viſiers, and the two Cadeleſchers ſit four dayes in every week. Their deciſions are ſpeedy and moſt juſt, for that the Grand Signior hath a place private to himſelf to inſpect their Deportment; and it is very certain that the late Sultan *Morat* being there one day, and hearing judgement given againſt a Coyner, to loſe his right hand, which is the onely puniſhment for that fact, by a waft of his hand out of the window, unſeen to any but the Executioner, gave a ſign for cutting off the Fellows head, as judging him to deſerve death, which the Executioner performing, to the amazement of the *Divan*, they ſentenced him to the ſame infliction (for ſentence and Execution are done at one and the ſame time) which the fellow preparing for, and refuſing to give any account or reaſon of his Action, as relying upon the Emperors intervention, was by his own mouth, out of the ſame Privacy abſolved and acquitted of the fact, as done by his Command.

The Divan.

A notable ſtory of Sultan *Morat*.

Beſides, by the Emperors publick appearance every Friday, when he goes in great State on Horſe-back to the Temple of St. *Sophia*, attended by no leſs then 20000. men, ſuch is the Majeſty, and conſequently the awful dread of this Prince (though to their joyful acclamations he will anſwer by beſtowing his bleſſings chearfully upon the people, and ſhows himſelf ready to receive all manner of complaints from all manner of perſons, inſomuch that none of his attendants dare deny the receipt of any paper from the meaneſt wretch, nor the greateſt of his Officers hope for any favour upon any true information of their oppreſſion and injuſtice) I ſay by this means juſtice is kept moſt part uncorrupted; and the Grand Seignior upon the account of his impartial ſeverity towards his Miniſters, though he ſqueezeth to himſelf by their death or exile the juice of their oppreſſion, is moſt infinitely beloved and admired by his ſubjects, being by his ſtate, magnificence and juſtice, conceived by them to have ſomething more then humane in his nature.

The Emperours publick apearanee every Friday for prevention of Injuſtice.

As to their common Trials, (which is by way of *viva voce*, and the Oaths of Witneſſes) though of late the atteſtation of a Muſſelman or Turkiſh believer is often taken for an authentick proof againſt a Stranger, yet in their ordinary trials between one another, they do proceed with more caution, and upon ſurer grounds, (for even the Religious orders of which there are four, and are preſumed for the honour of their Religion not to be taintible

The *Turks* Trials.

ble with any crime are given moſt exceſſively to ſubornation and perjury) extracting ground and juſt preſumptions for ſentence from private examinations and queſtions, ſo artificially put, as no premeditated combination can evade, yet generally the Turks bears a more awful reverence to Oaths then Chriſtians, nor are they found to alloy it with the poyſonous mixtures of equivocation, though the Jews that live among them are very prone to forſwear and abuſe that ſacred name they pretend to have in ſo much veneration, and for this reaſon and other wicked ſubtilties of that people, they will not ſuffer them to turn Turks, (which they would readily do, becauſe of the ſame common principle of Circumciſion) unleſs they will firſt turn Chriſtians, which goes againſt the grain, and keeps numbers of them from being converts to *Mahomet*.

Turks reverence Oaths more then Chriſtians.

But to proceed, from all Judges both extraordinary and ordinary at the Port, and in the ſeveral Villages of the Provinces (for a Juſtice or Caddie is appointed for every Town) there lies an appeal to the Muſti or Mahometan chief Biſhop (who is next to be conſidered in the Government) to whom all controverſies, difficulties or perverted judgement are ſubmitted for his final ſentence, and even the grand Signior himſelf doth and muſt refer himſelf, but his Oracle is ſounded before, and muſt not utter one word more or leſs then is directed to him, and ſhall fit the convenience of State, for as it hath bin excellently obſerved, the Turk hath the Muſti

The Muſti.

and

and *Mecca* both in his own Dominions, and is not forced in ſome untoward occurrences to apply himſelf to forreign diſpenſations. And ſometimes the Grand Signior makes not nice to remove his Arch-Clergy-man, as well as other of his Tribe, if they once interfere with the State, yet without any tumult or Faction, or ſcarce any blemiſh to the perſons of the men, who ſhall be reputed Saints, and ſo Calendaried, even if put to death, ſuch is the radical opinion of their unſtained ſanctity and integrity.

As to the Baſhaws and Beglerbegs, and their honours for life, their poſterity being reckoned for no more then common Turks, unleſs their own worth ſhall raiſe them, by which all potent combination of families is prevented; as we ſhall ſpeak of more liberally in the following Treatiſe.

The number of his Chriſtian Vaſſals.

In the time of *Selymus*, were reckoned one million and thirty three thouſand Chriſtian ſouls to live within his Dominions, not accounting thoſe that enjoyed freedom of conſcience by priviledge, nor thoſe that then were ſubject to the *Egyptian* Sultan, whom the ſaid *Selymus* vanquiſhed, but now they are in far greater numbers.

Of Jews likewiſe

The Jews likewiſe live diſperſed over his whole Dominions, in ſuch infinite numbers, that ſcarce no Town nor Village, but is very populouſly repleniſhed with their Families, ſpeaking divers Languages, and uſing the trade of Merchandize in ample and rich faſhion. Thus

to

to my power have I laid out the portraiture of this mighty, tyrannical, irreligious and bloody Empire, which as it began by the ſword, and is propagated by the ſword, ſo let all Chriſtians henceforth pray, that by the ſword it may fall, and at laſt vanquiſh into nothing, as of nothing (to ſpeak of) it took Original.

CHAP. VI.

Their Religion and Foperies.

THe Turkiſh Religion, (if we may give ſo high a Title to ſuch a meſs of non-ſence) is a hodge-podge of all ſects and opinions, but ſo ridiculous that any one well in his wits cannot chuſe but laugh heartily at its abſurdities; and no wonder, their Law-giver *Mahomet* being troubled with the Megrims, that he ſhould vend ſuch traſh, and thoſe people addicted to all manner of luxury ſhould receive a Religion ſuitable to their ſordid appetites. To rehearſe all his mad whimzical conceits, would make a ſufficient volume of it ſelf; we ſhall only in a brief Epitomy give you a taſte of ſome of the moſt notorious, by which you may give a gueſs of the reſt.

And firſt concerning his opinion of Heaven, whither he ſaith he was carried by an Angel, and let in by *Gabriel* the Porter there; where he ſaw a Cock ſo great, that ſtanding upon the Moon, his Coxcomb reacht into the imperial Heaven, many

ny millions of miles altitude, and when this mighty Chanticlear crowed, all the Cocks upon earth re-ecchoed him; this he saw in the first Heaven; In the fourth he beheld an infinite company of Angels, whereof every one was a thousand times bigger then the Globe of the earth; each of them had ten thousand heads, every head threescore and ten thousand tongues, and every tongue praised God in seven hundred thousand several languages: amongst other of these Angels, (saith he) was one named *Phatyr*, or the Angel of mercy, who was of that immense greatness, that every step he trode was twelve times more then the distance betwixt the Poles. This Angel (said he) had a quill or pen of Orient Pearl, of such a length, that an excellent *Arabian* Courser could hardly reach to the end of it in five hundred years continual galloping; with this pen (saith he) doth God record all things past, present and to come, in such a mysterious Character, that none but he and *Seraphael* can understand it; with this quill were written all the hundred and four Holy Books, *viz.* the ten which *Adam* received, *Seth* fifty, *Enoch* thirty, and *Abraham* the remainder; this pen forsooth also, writ *Moses* Law, *David's* Psalms, Christ's *Gospel*, and *Mahomet's* Alcoran. In the seventh Heaven he saw the Throne of God, supported by seven Angels, each of them so great, that a Faulcon with incessant flying could

scarce

ſcarce in a thouſand years reach the diſtance of one eye from another; fourteen everlaſting burning candles hung about the Throne, whoſe length (according to *Mahomets* meaſure) was as much as a horſe could run in five hundren years. There (ſaith this blaſphemer) did he ſee the Almighty, who bid him welcome, and ſtroaked him on the face with his hand, which was a thouſand times colder then ice. Here *Mahomet* for ſhame of his own baſeneſs bluſht, and ſweat ſix drops, which he wiped from his brow and threw into Paradiſe, where one became a Roſe, another a grain of Rice, and the other four became four learned Men, *viz.* *Armet*, *Sembelin*, *Almamed*, *Molec-zed*, & *Seb-naffip*.

Who would think people ſhould be ſo credulous to believe ſuch antick ſtories; but his other opinions were full as ridiculous, as concerning the day of Judgement, that he ſhould paint it out by a great and fearful Duel betwixt him and death, who being overcome ſhall be ſo inraged, that he ſhall deſtroy all the world preſently, and being armed in flaming braſs, ſhall ſound his Trumpet to each quarter of the world, whoſe affrighting noiſe ſhall make all creatures to give up the ghoſt: yea, the very Angels alſo ſhall die, as alſo *Adriel*, who wrapping his iron wings about him, ſhall ſtrangle himſelf with ſuch a hideous noiſe as is not to be imagined.

Then

Then shall ensue a terrible earth-quake, and a violent shower of parching brimstone, which shall turn the world into a disordered Chaos, in which condition it shall remain the space of forty days, at which time God shall take it in his fist and say, *Where are now the haughty Princes, the cruel Tyrants, lascivious Wantons, and covetous Muck-worms of the earth?* Then will he rain down mercy for forty dayes and nights together incessantly, which shall reduce the world again into a flourishing estate. Then shall the Angel *Seraphiel* take a golden Trumpet in his hand, of length 500 years travel from one end to another, with which he shall give such a sound, as shall revive again both Angels and men, who shall re-assume their former estate after this; *Michael* the Arch-Angel comes with a mighty Ballance, and poyses every mans actions in either scale, those whose good deeds outweigh their evil, are put on the right hand, the other on the left. Then is every man loaden with his sins in a satchel and hung about his neck, with which they pass on a narrow weak bridge over the mouth of Hell; now those that be heavy laden break the bridge and fall therein, but such as have but few sins pass over securely; on the other side of the bridge stands *Mahomet*, who shall be transformed into the shape of a mighty Ram, full of locks and long fleeces of wool, in which all his Sectaries like Fleas shall shroud themselves, then will he jump into Paradise, and so convey them all thither.

Paradise he described to be as many miles about

bout as there be Atoms in the Sun, and that it is encloſed with a wall of ninety times refined gold, ten thouſand miles high, and three thouſand thick; it hath ſeven Gates to enter in at, and is divided into ſeven ſpacious Gardens, and thoſe ſubdivided into ſeventy times ſeven ſeveral places of delight. In this place he promiſes to his Muſſel-men, or true Believers, all ſenſual pleaſures and delights imaginable; namely, that they ſhould have garments of ſilk, with all ſorts of colours, bracelets of gold and Amber, Parlors and Banquetting-houſes upon floods and Rivers, veſſels of Gold and Silver, Angels ſerving them, bringing in Gold and Silver Flaggons Milk and Wine, curious Lodgings rarely furniſhed, Cuſhions, Pillows and Down-beds, moſt beautiful Women to accompany them, Maidens and Virgins with twinkling eyes, Gardens and Orchards with Arbors, Fountains, Springs, and all manner of pleaſant fruit, Rivers of Milk, Honey and ſpiced Wine; all manner of ſweet Odours, Perfumes, and fragrant Scents, yea whatſoever the fleſh ſhall deſire to have. In this Paradiſe (ſaith *Mahomet*) there is a Table of Diamond, ſeven hundred thouſand dayes journey long; this is for men to feaſt upon, ſitting on chairs of Gold and Pearl. *Gabriel* the Porter of Paradiſe hath ſeventy thouſand keys which belong to his Office, and every key is ſeven thouſand miles long; queſtionleſs he muſt be very ſtrong, or elſe thoſe keys muſt needs tire him. Here (ſaith the Alcoran) ſhall men

tum-

tumble in all manner of pleasure, repoſing upon fair beds lined with Crimſon; there ſhall they gather the fruits of the Garden to their contentment; there ſhall they enjoy the company of fair and beautiful Damoſels, whoſe hairs be threds of Gold, their eyes of Diamonds as big as the Moon, their lips of Cherries, their teeth of Pearl, their tongues of Rubies, their cheeks of Coral, their noſes of Jaſper, their fore-heads of Saphyr, their eyes exceeding black, and bodies exceeding white, round fac'd, ſweet, amorous and beautiful; there ſhall they ſpend the time with theſe Virgins in pleaſant Arbors, who being enjoyed, ſhall have their Virginities again renewed as often as loſt. In the midſt of this delightful place (ſaith he) is a very high ſpreading Tree, higher then all the Mountains in the world, were they heap'd one upon another, and ſo broad that it ſhadeth all Paradiſe. The trunk of this extraordinary rare tree is all of Diamond, the leaves of Ophirian gold, and the boughs of jet; each leaf hath an antick ſhape, having on one ſide growing the name of God, and on the other that of *Mahomet*.

Such groſs abſurdities did he publiſh to catch the credulous inconſiderate multitude; but his devices are ſo ridiculous, that a wiſe man cannot chuſe but ſmile at his conceits in pleaſure: this indeed hath made many of the moſt ſerious of them, to miſlike his inventions and ſenſual delights; amongſt the reſt hear *Avicena*, one of his own Sect; *Mahomet* (ſaith he) *hath gi-*

ven

ven as a Law which ſheweth the perfection of felicity to conſiſt in thoſe things which concern the body, whereas the wiſe and ſages of old had a greater deſire to expreſs the felicity of the ſoul then of the body; as for the bodily felicity, though it were granted them, yet they regarded it not nor eſteemed it, in compariſon of the felicity which the ſoul requireth.

Nor were his ridiculous ſopperies of Hell leſs then the other; namely, that it was in the navel of the world, compaſſed with a large high wall of attractive Adamant, having ſeven gates of flaming braſs to enter in at; that it was divided into ſeveral Cells or Dungeons, whereof ſome were more loathſom and fuller of torments then others, which are prepared for thoſe ſouls who have higheſt tranſgreſſed. Some of theſe Caves (ſaith he) are ſo deep, that a milſtone in a thouſand years cannot attain to the bottom, and other places are without bottom: In the deſcent of theſe deep Caves or Dungeons, are placed ſharp pikes and ſwords to wound and torment the ſouls that move there. Theſe Dungeons are full of flaming oyle and brimſtone, which ſtriketh ſuch a terror, that the very Devils themſelves do howl, ſcrich and rage there beyond meaſure: other Dungeons be full of ſerpents, toads, and all manner of venamous and noiſom creatures that can be imagined. Here ſhall the wicked eat of the fruit of the Tree *Zacon*, which being in their guts ſhall flame like ſulphur, they ſhall drink boyling water, and every day have alteration of new tor-

ments. Some Rivers (ſaith he) be full of Crocodiles, others ſo cold as makes them gnaſh and chatter, others boyl with violence of heat; yet (ſaith the Alcoran) ſhall not theſe pains endure for ever; for after ſo many thouſand years, when each ſoul hath ſuffered according to the demerits of the ſins which he hath committed, then ſhall they be delivered by *Mahomet*, (yea his charity is ſo great, that he will deliver the Devils alſo) firſt changing their affrighting ſhapes into others more tolerable, and then by waſhing them in a River flowing out of Paradiſe called *Alcanzar*, they ſhall become whiter then the driven ſnow, and from thence forward ſing *Lala billulaes* unto *Mahomet*.

His doctrine of Angels was, that they were either good or bad, yet both ſubject to death; the good as conſiſting of flame, becauſe *Lucifer* an Angel, by ambition was caſt out of Paradiſe; the bad Angels are impriſoned in Dogs, Swine, Toads, Wolves, Bears, Tygers, &c. After the Judgement day they muſt be tormented in Hell ſome millions of years, and afterwards be delivered by *Mahomet*.

As abſurd and ridiculous were his opinions concerning our Saviour Chriſt, as that the Virgin *Mary* conceived him by ſmelling to a Roſe preſented to her by the Angel *Gabriel*, and that he was born out of her breaſts: alſo, that he was not crucified, but *Judas* or ſome other wicked thief in his ſtead, Chriſt being ſeparated from them by a cloud that covered him, which came from Heaven: that at the

laſt

laſt day the Righteous ſhould enter into Heaven, the Jews under the banner of *Moſes*, the Chriſtians under the banner of Chriſt, and the *Saracens* under his banner.

Having with theſe and the like odd whimzies, patched up his Alcoran, to give it the better credit, that the people might imagine it to come from Heaven, he deviſed this cuning way; He ſeeretly cauſed a wild Aſs to be taken and bound, his Alcoran being fairly written about his neck; then as he preached unto the people, he pretended a ſudden rapture of ſome extraordinary thing that was revealed to him from above, and with a loud voice ſpake to the people, *Ye have deſired a Law, behold God hath ſent you a Law from Heaven; go to ſuch a Deſart, there ſhall ye find an Aſs, and a Book tyed about his neck, which will direct you in the wayes which God hath commanded.*

Thereupon the people ran in great haſt, and (as they could do no other) found it according as he had ſaid; ſo with great pomp they bring back the Aſs with the Book about his neck, ſuitable to the bearer; and now (as thoroughly convinced) they give great honour to this their new Prophet. Thus were theſe ſilly ſouls deluded by this cunning Impoſtor, who worſe then *Heroſtratus*, purchaſed to himſelf a laſting name by by the grandeſt wickedneſs that could be committed. We ſhall conclude this Chapter with a brief Epitomy or Summary of

their Religion (ſuch as it is) wherein all thoſe that are not wholly given over to ſenſuality and brutiſhneſs, may ſee the ridiculous machine whereon the great fabrick of their faith is grounded.

A Summary of the Religion of the TURKS.

THe Turks believe one ſole God, in one ſole Perſon, Creator of heaven and earth, the rewarder of the good, and puniſher of the wicked; who hath created Paradiſe for the recompence of the righteous, and Hell for the laſt puniſhment of crimes. They believe that *Mahomet* was a very great Prophet, whom God ſent in the world to teach men the way of ſalvation; and call themſelves *Muſulmans*, that is to ſay, recommended to God, or ſaved.

They believe the Decalogue of *Moſes*, and are obliged to obſerve it; they celebrate Friday as the Chriſtians Sunday, that day they aſſemble in Temples at noon to pray.

They are obliged to pray five times a day, *viz.* in the morning, at noon, at the evening, when the Sun ſetteth, and an hour within night.

They faſt the month, or moon, which they call *Ramazan*; during this month, they neither drink nor eat all the day, until the Sun be ſet, but in the night drink and eat according to their appetites, fleſh and fiſh, except the fleſh

of

of ſwine, and wine that is all times forbidden them; after this faſt they have the feaſt of great *Bairan*, as the Chriſtians Eaſter after Lent. They are great founders of Temples and Hoſpitals, and are obliged to give to the poor the firſt day of the year, the Tyth of what they have gained during the preceding year.

In this *Bayran* or *Byram*, laſting 3 days, they are very jolly, and give Preſents like our New-years gifts eſpecially the Grand Seignior gives and receives much.

They believe, that after being well waſht, ſaying ſome prayer appropriate to that Ceremony, they have alſo the ſoul purified from all filthineſs of ſin, which is the cauſe that they waſh and bath often, eſpecially before they pray.

They have no Sacrament but Circumciſion; they cauſe their children to be circumciſed at the age of ſeven or eight years; and when they can pronounce theſe words, *La ilha ilha allha Mehemet raſoul allha*, that is, There is but one God, *Mahomet* is his Prophet and Apoſtle; this is their profeſſion of Faith; nevertheleſs there is no mention of Circumciſion in all the *Alcoran*; they ſay they obſerve it in imitation of *Abraham*, whoſe Law is recommended to them by *Mahomet*; they believe that the *Alcoran* was brought to him at ſeveral times by the Angel *Gabriel* in the City of *Mecca*, and that of *Medina*, becauſe the Jews and Chriſtians had altered the holy Scriptures, and the Law of God.

They are permitted to have four wives, married at the ſame time, and as many Concubines as they are able to maintain.

They can put away their wives when they think fit, paying them what they promiſed

them in contract of marriage, and marry again at their pleasure; but the women are bound to tarry until they are assured that they are not with child before they marry again; and their husbands are obliged to keep, and take the care of the child. The children which they have by their slaves are indifferently esteemed with those of their wives, and are all held as legitimate.

They have Temples, Colledges, and Hospitals well revenued; they have covents of Religious, that live exemplary; obey their Superiours without contradiction, and dance after the sound of Flutes and other instruments when they make their prayers.

They have moreover another sort of Religious Vagabonds through the world, cloathed like fools of that Country; they often go naked, and cut their skin in many places, they are held to be holy persons, and live by alms, which are never refused them; both the one and the other sort of Religious are called *Dervis*, they are known by their habit, and can retire and marry when they please.

They deny Jesus Christ to be God, or the Son of God; neither believe they in the holy Trinity: they say that Jesus Christ was a great Prophet, born of the Virgin *Mary*, a Virgin both before and after her delivery; that he was conceived by divine inspiration, or by a divine breath, without a father, as *Adam* was created without a mother; that he was not crucified, that God took him into heaven, and

that

that he ſhall come again on earth at the end of the world to confirm the Law of *Mahomet*; they likewiſe affirm, that the Jews thinking to crucifie Jeſus Chriſt, crucified a man among them that reſembled him.

They pray to God for the Dead, they invoke their Saints, of whom they have a large Legend, nevertheleſs they believe not Purgatory; and many among them imagine that the ſoul and body remain together in the grave until the day of Judgement. A great queſtion among *Mahometans.*

They have *Meeca* and *Medina*, that are two Cities of *Arabia*, in great veneration becauſe *Mahomet* was born at *Meeca*, and buried at *Medina*: they make thither great pilgrimages, and believe that Land to be Holy: They bear likewiſe ſingular reſpect to the City of *Jeruſalem*, for that it hath been the Birth-place, and habitation of many Prophets.

They uſe no Clocks; at the hour of their prayers their Prieſts aſcend the higheſt part of the Tower, that is in a corner of the Temple, and with a loud voice call the people to prayer, ſinging prayer, compoſed for that purpoſe.

CHAP. VII.

The Seraglio or Court of the Great SIGNOR.

HAving before mentioned the place, to satisfie some Curiosities concerning this Emperors pleasures, in which he satisfies himself with variety, conversing with his Mutes and Buffones (for that it is not lawful for any body but the Vizier Bassa's, and some few others to speak to him) in the same signes and gestures, and now and then riding, and shooting, and casting a heavy Iron Mace, all which he is taught to do with great exactness; I will transiently speak of that, then which nothing is more secret and reserved, *viz.* His Companying with women, the beautifullest those parts of the world afford, the greatest excellency and perfection whereof is reputed to consist in great and broad eyes; the enjoyment of women so featured, being made a part of their Paradise in the World to come.

They which are within the third gate, called the Kings gate, are about two thousand persons, men and women; whereof the women (old and young one with another; what with the Kings Concubines, old women, and women servants) may be about eleven or twelve hundred. Now those which are kept up for their beauties, are all young Virgins, taken and stollen from forraign Nations; who after they

they have been inſtructed in good behaviour, and can play upon Inſtruments, Sing, Dance, and ſew curiouſly; they are given to the Grand Signor as preſents of great value, and the number of theſe encreaſeth daily, as they are ſent and preſented by the Tartars, by the Baſhaws, and other great men, to the King and Queen. They do likewiſe ſometimes decreaſe, according as the Grand Signor ſhall think fit. For upon divers occaſions and accidents, he cauſeth many of them to be turned out of this Seraglio, and to be ſent into the Old Seraglio: which is alſo a very goodly and ſpacious place, of which hereafter I ſhall take occaſion to make mention. Theſe Virgins immediately after their coming into the Seraglio, are made Turks, which is done by uſing this Ceremony onely; to hold up their fore-finger and ſay theſe words; *law illawheh illaw Allawh, Mahummed reſoul Allawh.* That is, there is no God but God alone, and *Mahomet* is the Meſſenger of God. As they are in age and diſpoſition (being proved and examined by an old woman called *Kahiyah Cadun*, that is, as we ſay, the Mother of the Maids) ſo they are placed in a room with the other of the ſame age, ſpirit, and inclination, to dwell and live together.

Virgins made Turks and how.

Kahiyah Cadun, the mother of the Maids.

Now in the womens lodging, they live juſt as Nuns do in great Nunneries, for theſe Virgins have very large rooms to live in, and their Bed-Chambers will hold almoſt a hundred of them apiece. They ſleep upon Sofaes, which are built

Their manner of life.

built long-wise on both sides of the room, and a large space left in the midst to go to and fro about their business.

Their Beds are very course and hard (for the Turks neither use Feather-beds nor Corded Bed-steads,) and by every ten Virgins their lies an old woman, and all the night long there are many lamps burning, so that one may see plainly throughout the whole room: which doth both keep the wenches from wantonness, and serve upon any occasion which may happen in the night. Nearunto the said Bed-Chambers they have their Bagnos for their use at all times: with many Fountains, out of which they are served with water, and above their Chambers there are divers rooms, where they sit and sew: and there they keep their Books, and Chests, in which they lay up their apparel.

They feed by whole *Camarades*, and are served and waited upon by other women: nor do they want any thing whatsoever that is necessary for them.

There are other places likewise for them, where they go to School, to learn to speak and read (if they will) the Turkish tongue, to sew also, and to play on divers instruments, so they spend the day with their Mistresses, who are all antient women: some hours notwithstanding being allowed them for their recreation, to walk in their Gardens, and use such sports as they familiarly exercise themselves withall.

The

The King doth not at all frequent or ſee theſe Virgins, unleſs it be at that inſtant when they are firſt preſented unto him; or elſe in caſe that he deſire one of them for his Bed-fellow, or to make him ſome paſtime with muſick or other ſports: wherefore when he is prepared for a freſh Mate, he gives notice to the *Kabiya Cadun* of his purpoſe; who immediately beſtirs her ſelf like a crafty Baud, and chuſeth out ſuch as ſhe judgeth to be moſt amiable, and faireſt of all; and having placed them in good order in a room, in two ranks, like ſo many pictures, half on the one ſide, and half on the other, ſhe forthwith brings in the King, who walking four or five times in the midſt of them, and having viewed them well, taketh good notice within himſelf of her that he beſt liketh, but ſays nothing; onely as he goeth out again, he throweth a Handkercheif into that Virgins hand; by which token ſhe knoweth that ſhe is to lik with him that night: ſo ſhe being (queſtionleſs) exceeding joyful to become the object of ſo great a fortune, in being choſen out from among ſo many, to enjoy the ſociety of an Emperor, hath all the art that poſſible may be, ſhown upon her by the *Cadun*, in attiring, painting, and perfuming her; and at night ſhe is brought to ſleep with the Grand Signior in the womans lodgings, where there are Chambers ſet apart for that buſineſs onely. And being in bed together, they have two great wax-ſights burning by them all night; one at the beds feet, and the other by the door: beſides there are appointed

The Kings coming to them.

appointed (by the *Cadun*) divers old Blackmore women, to watch by turns that night in the Chamber, by two at a time; one of them to ſit by the light at the beds feet, and the other by the door, and when they will they change, and other two ſupply their rooms, without making the leaſt noiſe imaginable, ſo that the King is not any whit diſturbed. Now in the morning when his Highneſs riſeth (for he riſeth firſt) he changeth all his apparel from top to toe, leaving thoſe which he wore, to her that he lay withal, and all the money that was in his pockets, were it never ſo much; and ſo departeth to his own lodings; from whence alſo he ſendeth her immediately a preſent of jewels, money, and veſts of great value, agreeable to the ſatisfaction and content which he received from her that night. In the ſame manner he deals with all ſuch as he maketh uſe of in that kind; but with ſome he continueth longer then with other ſome, and enlargeth his bounty far more towards ſome then others; according as his humour, and affection to them encreaſeth, by their fulfilling his luſtful deſires.

And if it ſo fall out, that any one of them doth conceive by him, and bring forth his firſt begotten child: then ſhe is called by the name of Sultana Queen: and if it be a Son, ſhe is confirmed and eſtabliſhed by great feaſts, and ſolemnity; and forthwith hath a dwelling aſſigned unto her a part, of many ſtately rooms well furniſhed; and many ſervants to attend upon her.

Sultana Queen.

The

The King likewiſe alloweth her a large Revenue, that ſhe may give away and ſpend at her pleaſure, in whatſoever ſhe may have occaſion; and all they of the Seraglio muſt, and do acknowledge her for Queen, ſhewing all the duty and reſpect that may be, both to her ſelf, and to them that belong unto her. Her allowance.

The other women (however they bring forth iſſue) are not called Queens; yet they are called Sultana's, becauſe they have had carnal commerce with the King: and ſhe onely is called Queen, which is the Mother of the firſt begotten Son, heir to the Empire; the which *Sultanas*, being frequented by the King at his pleaſure, have alſo this prerogative; to be immediately removed from the common ſort, and to live in rooms apart, exceeding well ſerved and attended; and have no want either of money or apparel, in conformity to their degree.

All theſe Sultanaes do reſort together very familiarly, when they pleaſe; but not without great diſſimulation, and inward malice; fearing leſt the one ſhould be better beloved of the Grand Signor then the other; yet notwithſtanding this their jealouſie, they (in outward ſhew) uſe all kind of courteſie one towards another. Other Sultanas.

They never ſtir out of the Seraglio but in company of the King himſelf, who often times carrys either all, or moſt of them abroad by water, to his other Seraglio's of pleaſure: and in thoſe ways through which they paſs, to go

to

Their Barges.

to and fro from their *Kaiks*, there is Canvas pitched up on both sides, and none may come near them but black Eunuchs, till they be setled, and covered close in the room, at the stern of the Kaik; and then go in the Bargemen; so that in fine they are never seen by any men, but by the Grand Signior only, and the Eunuchs.

The Kings Daughters, Sisters, and Aunts, have their lodgings also in the same Seraglio; being royally served, and very sumptuously apparelled, and live together by themselves in continual pleasures; until such time as at their request the King shall be pleased to give them in Marriage: and then they come forth of that Seraglio, and carry each of them along with them a Chest which the Grand Signior gives them, full of rich apparel, jewels, and money; to the value of (at the least) thirty thousand pounds sterling a chest; and that is (as we call it) their portion.

The Kings Sons by the Queen

The Kings Sons, which are born unto him by his Queen, are Nursed, and brought up together by themselves, by choise Nurses, which are found abroad without the Seraglio. But if his Majesty have Sons also by other Sultanaes, (as commonly every Grand Signior hath) then those are brought up apart, and not with the Queens; so that every Mother careth for her own Children, and that with great Envy and Jealousie: yet they may play together, till they come to be of six or seven years of Age; being much made of, sumptuously maintained, and

and apparelled all alike at the Kings charge.

They live among the women till they come to be of nine or ten years of Age, and about fourteen, they are Circumciſed with Great Pomp and Solemnities throughout the whole City, eſpecially the Eldeſt Son. For the Circumciſion of the Turks Children are like to the Chriſtian Weddings; there being uſed at them, great Feaſting, Banquetting, Muſick, and bringing of Preſents. Circumciſion ſolemnity.

From five years of age until ten, (during which time they live amongſt the Women) they have their *Hojah* (that is, their School-Maſter, appointed them by the King to teach them to Write, and Read; and to inſtruct them in good manners, that they may behave themſelves decently before the King their Father; which *Hojah* comes once a day into the womens Seraglio, and is brought into a Chamber by the black Eunuchs (without ever ſeeing the Kings women at all) whither the Children come, accompanied with two or three old Black-moor-women ſlaves; and there they are taught for ſo many hours together, as their Tutor is permitted to ſtay, and then he departeth.

As for the Daughters, they are but ſlightly looked after; nor is the King ſo tender and careful over them. For as they are not ſuſpected at all, for any thing that may concern the State in future times; ſo likewiſe are they not much reſpected: yet they are well The Kings daughters

well provided for by the Grand Seignior their Father, in case they live to be fit for Husbands.

After the *Shawb-zawdeh* (the next heir to the Crown) is Circumcised; if his Father think it unfit to keep him any longer with him at home in the Seraglio, he provides all things fitting for to send him abroad: that he may see the world, and learn experience, the better to enable him to govern the Empire after his Fathers decease: sending along with him one of his principal, and trusty Eunuchs for to be his guide, and overseer in all his actions; besides many servants to attend upon him: all which he chuseth out of his own Seraglio. He allows him likewise sufficient means to maintain him like a Prince (as he doth also the rest of his Sons, if he have a purpose to send any of them abroad.) And so all things being well ordered, and prepared for him; having taken his leave of his Father and Mother (who present him with many gifts, as also the Sultanaes, and all the Bashaws, and great men of the Port do) he departs for *Magnesia* a City in *Asia*, there to reside in the Government of that Province; in which he hath not the supreme Authority, but governs onely as his Fathers Deputy. And should he pass the limits of his commission, he would quickly fall into disgrace, and suspicion of Rebellion; as heretofore it hath happened unto divers of his predecessors, sent out in the same manner. Wherefore the Eunuch which is appointed to be his

The Prince sent abroad.

An *Eunuch* his Overseer.

Magnesia his residence.

His Commission.

his helper and over-ſeer, is bound to give continual advice to the *Grand Signior* of his deportment, and to the *Viziers*, of all occurrences whatſoever, according to the carge given him: and likewiſe to receive from *Conſtantinople* ſuch orders and commandments, as are to be obeyed in thoſe parts, where the Prince reſideth. So that all things (in a manner) are ſwayed by the diſcretion of the Eunuch.

His bedding.

And as for his lodging, he ſleeps upon mattreſſes of velvet, and cloth of gold: in the ſummer in ſheets of *Shaſh* embroidered with ſilk, ſown to the quilts, and in the winter betwixt coverlets of *Luſernes* or of *Sabells*, wearing all night a *Gbeje-lick* or little *ſhaſh* on his head.

A *Shaſh* is the whole peice (be it long or ſhort) of fine linnen.

Pages watch.

And when he lies alone in his own lodgings, he is alwayes watched by the Pages of his chamber, by two and two at a time, changing their watch every three hours; one of them ſtanding at the chamber door; and the other by the bed ſide to cover him, in caſe the clothes ſhould ſlide off, and to be near hand if his Majeſty ſhould want any thing, or be ill at eaſe. In the ſame chamber alſo where he lies, there are alſo two old women that wait with burning torches in their hands, which they may not put out, till ſuch time as the King is riſen out of his bed: now the uſe of theſe lights is, for his Majeſty to ſay over his Beads, and for to pray by, in caſe his devotion be ſtirred up thereto at midnight, or at *Temcheet namaz*, which is about two hours before day.

Two torch women.

Womens habit.

The habit of his women is much like to that of

Breeches from the waste down to the heel.

the men. For they wear *Chackfirs*, and Buskins too, and the meaner sort of them have their shooes shod with iron at the heels.

No close-stools among the men; but the women ever when they go to the *Haman* or *Bagno*, carry them along with them. No paper used at the privy. They also call it *Kecheh*, that is, a *Janizaries* cap, but *Vskuf* properly signifieth a hood.

They likewise sleep as the men do, in their linnen breeches, and quilted waste-coats; having thin and light ones for the summer, and more thick and warm ones for the winter.

The Turks never have any close-stools or such like utensils in their chambers; but having necessity they rise, and go to the privies, made in places apart, where there do alwayes stand pots full of water ready, that they may wash when they have done, for they use no paper in that service, as others do; holding it not only undecent, but an extraordinary absurdity, for a *Mussulman* to put paper to so base a use: seeing that both the name of God, and the *Mahometan* Law, are written upon the like. They all put off their Turbants when they go about that business; and a *Janizary* may by no means piss with his *Vskuf* upon his head, but having done, he must kiss it, and so put it on again. For they hold the covering of their heads to be as honourable in a manner as the head it self.

Grand Seignors bed-chamber described. Hangings before the doors.

His Majesties Bed-chamber is near unto the great Hall of Audience, in the third Court of the Seraglio, the walls whereof are covered with stones of the finest *China*-metal, spotted with flowers of divers colours, which make an excellent shew: The *Anteperta's* are of cloth of gold of *Bursia*, and their Borders of Crimson velvet embroidered with gold and pearls: The posts of the bed-stead are of silver, hollow,

and

and inſtead of knobs on the tops of them, there are ſet Lions made of Chriſtal: The Canopy over it is of cloth of gold, and ſo are the bolſters, and the matreſſes. The floor of this Chamber (as of the other rooms) and the Sofaes, are ſpread with very coſtly *Perſian* Carpets of ſilk and gold: and the Pallets to ſit on, with the Cuſhions to lean upon, are of very rich cloth of gold. Lions of Chriſtal.

The victuals in the Seraglio (for the moſt part are dreſſed by *Agiamoglans* brought up to Cookery, (which are called *Aſchees*, and are known from other *Agiamoglans* by their white caps; yet in the form of a ſuger-loaf as well as the others are) howbeit there are belonging to the Kitchins that are therein, more then two hundred under-cooks, and skullions; beſides their principal officers, as ſewers, caterers, & ſuch like: all which are carefully to look to their ſeveral Kitchins, and not any one to truſt another with his buſineſs. Victuals & Cooks. Cooks.

The Kings Kitchin begins to work ordinarily before break of day. For his Highneſs riſing betimes, there muſt be always ſomewhat ready for him; becauſe commonly he eateth three or four times a day. He dines uſually at ten of the clock in the forenoon, and ſups about ſix at night, as well in the Summer as in the Winter. The Sultans Kitchin & Meals.

When he hath a will to eat, he tells the *Capee Aga* of it, who forth-with ſends an Eunuch to give notice of the ſame to the chief Sewer, and he having cauſed the meat to be diſhed up,

brings it in diſh by diſh to the Kings Table: & ſo his Majeſty ſits down after the common Turkiſh fashion with his legs acroſs, having a very rich wrought towel caſt before him upon his knees to ſave his cloaths: & another hanging upon his left arm, which he uſeth for his Napkin to wipe his mouth & fingers. He is not carved unto, as other Princes are, but helps himſelf; having before him upon a peece of Bulgar Leather (which is inſtead of a table cloath) fine white bread, of three or four ſorts, well reliſhed, and always very new, as indeed all Turks love their bread beſt when it is warm, newly come forth of the Oven. He neither uſeth Knife nor Fork, but onely a wooden Spoon, of which there are two always layd before him the one ſerving him to eat his pottage, and the other to ſup up certain delicate Sirrups, made of divers fruits, compounded with the juice of Lemmons, and Sugar, to quench his thirſt. He taſteth of his diſhes one by one, and as he hath done with them they are taken off. His meat is ſo tender, and ſo delicately dreſſed, that (as I ſaid before) he needs no knife, but puls the fleſh from the bones very eaſily with his fingers. He uſeth no ſalt at his Table, neither hath he any *Antepaſte*; but immediately falls aboard the fleſh, and having well fed, cloſeth up his ſtomack with a *Bocklava*, or ſome ſuch like thing. And ſo his Dinner, or Supper, being ended, he waſheth his hands in a Baſen of gold, with the Ewer all ſet with precious ſtones.

His ſitting at meat.

A Tart.

His

His Majeſties ordinary diet (as I have been told by ſome of the *Aſchées*,) is, half a ſcore roſted Pigeons in a diſh; two or three Geeſe in a diſh, Lamb, Hens, Chickens, Mutton, and ſometimes wild fowl, but very ſeldom: and look what he hath roſted for him, ſo he hath the ſame quantity boiled, almoſt of every thing, there being very good ſauce for every diſh, and other ingredients very pleaſing to the pallat. He hath likewiſe broaths of all ſorts; and divers Purcelain diſhes full of Preſerves and ſirrups; and ſome Tarts, and *Burecks* after their faſhion, made of fleſh covered with paſte: And having made an end of eating: he drinks one draught of *Sherbet* (ſeldom or never drinking above once at a meal) which is brought unto him by one of his *Agas* in a deep Purcelane diſh covered, ſtanding upon a flat under diſh of the ſame mettal.

Little pies

It is an *Arabian* word and ſignifies drinks.

All the while that he is at Table, he very ſeldom or never, ſpeaks to any man; albeit there ſtands before him many *Mutes* and *Buffones* to make him merry, playing tricks, and ſporting one with another *alla muteſcha*, which the King underſtands very well. For by ſignes their meaning is eaſily conceived, and if peradventure he ſhould vouchſafe to ſpeak a word or two, it is to grace ſome one of his *Agas* ſtanding by him, whom he highly favoureth by throwing unto him a loaf of bread from his own table: and this is held for a ſingular grace, & eſpecial favour; and he diſtributing part of it amongſt his companions, they likewiſe

wiſe accept of it at the ſecond hand, and account it as a great Honour done unto them, in regard it came from their Lord and King.

Diſhes, & Covers of gold.

The diſhes for his Highneſs Table, are all of gold, and ſo likewiſe are their Covers; they are in the cuſtody of the *Keelergee* Baſhaw, who attends at the Kitchin at Dinner, and Supper time: and ſo are all the Purcelane Diſhes (which are very coſtly and ſcarcely to be had for money) in which the Grand Siguior eats in the *Ramazan* time, which is their Lent, and laſteth a whole moon, and the month it ſelf is ſo called. Now at that time, the Turks never eat in the day, but onely in the night; not making any difference at all in meats; (except Swines fleſh and things ſtrangled, of which they are forbidden by their Law to eat at any time.)

Yellow purcelane for the *Ramazan*, or Lent.

The King ſeldom eats fiſh, unleſs it be when he is abroad, at ſome Garden Houſe by the Sea ſide, with his women; where he may ſit and ſee it taken himſelf.

CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

The common Customs and Manners of the Turks.

THe Fabricks of their Churches are ſufficiently large and ſumptuous, and called by the name of *Meſchites*: in which I never could perceive any ſort of fancies or imageries (for Idolatry is held by them the worſt of abominations) but only theſe, or one of theſe inſcriptions following, in the Arabick Language, *There is no God but one, and* Mahomet *his Prophet*; or, *One Creator and Prophets equal*: or, *None is ſtrong as God.* Then there is ſeen a great abundance of burning Lamps, the whole Church whited, the Pavement covered with Mattreſſes, and on them the Ornaments of Tapeſtries. Near the Church, is erected a Tower of great height, to the top whereof the Prieſt aſcends before the time of Prayers, and with a loud voice, his earr ſtopped with his fingers, he thrice proproclaims theſe words; *God, True, One*: which Clamour or Out-cry (for they have no Bells) being heard, the Nobility, and all unbuſied perſons, repair to Church, as bound to that devotion. Afterwards the ſaid Prieſt deſcending, prayes with them; (and then they turn their faces towards *Mecca*:) And this he is tyed to do by his Office, five times day and night. But whoſoever cometh to theſe Prayers, muſt waſh his hands, his feet and privities, and his head thrice ſprinkled with water: and theſe words

pro-

pronounced, *Glory to my God*; Then, their ſhooes put off, and left at the Church-door, they enter in, ſome bare-footed, others having new ſhooes or ſocks, and ſo tenderly touch the ground. Women come not into Churches, as being not excis'd, and for fear of diſturbing mens devotions, but meet apart in ſevered places, altogether ſhut off from eyes and ears of men; and more ſeldom frequent their Churches, except in time of Paſſeover or Eaſter, and on Fridays; which dayes from *Mahomets* Traditions, for diſtinction and imitation, they almoſt reſpect as much as Jews their Sabbaths, or Chriſtians the Lords day. They pray from nine a clock at night till twelve; and in their praying, their bodies are ever in great motion and agitation; wherewith they marvellouſly afflict themſelves with loud cryings and fierce ejaculations; ſo as oftentimes their ſtrengths and ſpirits failing, they ſink unto the ground; and if it happen any of them conceive her ſelf with child, ſhe then aſſures her ſelf that pregnancy proceeds from the favour of the Holy Spirit; and when delivered, the Infants born are called, *Sons, or Souls of the Holy Ghoſt*. This hath been related to me from their Hand-maids; for I, nor ever any man elſe were ever preſent at that ſpectacle. At mens devotions I have been often preſent with my Maſter; whoſe cuſtoms are in manner following: in their prayers they ne're take off (their Turbants) coverings of their heads, but with the tops of their fingers gently touch them, in token of taking them off; they

they fall upon their knees and often kiſs the ground: they hold it for great wickedneſs, to have a Chriſtian preſent at their myſteries; for they believe their Churches (as they ſay) to be polluted by men unwaſhed; and that Chriſtians uſe no ſuch Lavatories. Every Church in Turkie hath a peculiar place for Baths and waſhings, with lodings for a Prieſt. Now here the Prieſt aſcends his Pulpit (reads a piece of the Alcoran, and ſometimes expounds it) and there preaches about two hours; his Sermon ended, two boys come up to him, who pronounce their prayers ſinging with reſponſals; which Songs being ended, the Prieſt with the whole People in a low voice, beating upon their ſides, repeat theſe words, *There is but one God*; which for the ſpace of half an hour they do, and ſo depart. But this manner of prayers and ceremonies of preaching and ſinging, are not done every day, unleſs in time of Lent, Feſtivals, ſome Sundays; and moſt obſerve the Fridays for religious worſhip.

Of their Lent.

They keep their Lent by faſting one month and one week every Year; but not always the ſame: for if this Year they faſt out *January*, the next they faſt out *February*, and keep on that courſe; ſo as in twelve Years ſpace, they dedicate to God (in lieu of tenths) one Year and twelve Weeks. Travellers and ſick perſons are excuſed from preſent faſtings; but are enjoyned to ſupply it, by faſting to many daies at other times. When they faſt, all that Day they taſte nothing, not ſo much as bread or water; then

then the Stars appearing, it is lawful for them to eat of all things which are not strangled, or Hogs-flesh, which they esteem as Carrion, most unclean. Their Lent being past, they observe *Easter* for three days, with great solemnity anointing the nails of their Feet and Fingers with an Oyl which they call *Chna*, which makes those nails to shine like Gold; and with the same, they sometimes stain or colour the hoofs and tails of Horses. This Tincture holds very long, and can hardly be wiped away: so as until new nails thrust out the old, they still retain that dye; but nails of the hand, by frequent washing, abate in time. Women do not only anoint the nails, but their whole Hands and Feet also with that Oyl.

Of their Circumcision.

They Circumcise not on the eighth day as the *Jews* do, but when the new-born arrive at the age of seven or eight years, and be of perfect speech: the mysterie whereof, is from the words of confession required before Circumcision, which are some of those sentences afore-mentioned in their Churches, which they repeat, and give assent thereto, by holding up the Thumb of the right hand. The Youth is not for this mysterie brought unto their Church, but is circumcised in his Parents house. I have been often present at this solemnity, which is performed in manner following: first, the friends are all invited to a feast, sufficiently furnished with all sorts of delicate flesh, lawful for them to eat; and almost every where, especially amongst the wealthier sort, an Ox is killed, bowelled

bowelled and flayed; in the body whereof, they include a Sheep; and in that Sheep, a Hen; and in her, an Egge; all which are entirely roasted together, for the solemnity and splendor of that day. Then in their Feast and time of Supper, the Boy that is to be circumcised, is brought to a Physitian skilful in that Art, who fixing between a pair of pinchers the fore-skin of his privie Member, to prevent all fear in the Boy, he telleth him that the next day he will circumcise him, and so departs; but presently feigning to have omitted something appertaining to this preparation, on a sudden he cutteth off the fore-skin, applying thereunto a little salt and bombace; and then he is called a Musselman, that is, one circumcised. Yet their Names are given the day of their Nativity, not Circumcision. After continuance of this Feast for three dayes, the Boy with great pomp and solemnity is accompanied to the Baths; and being returned to his House, he is brought before the Guests, and by them presented with gifts prepared for him; some give Silver, Silken Vestments; some Silver Cups; others Money, and sometimes Horse. Women present him likewise, some with Shirts, Handkerchiefs, and such like, according to the several pleasures and abilities of the Guests. Women are not circumcised, only they confess the aforesaid words, and so made Musselmen. And if any Christian voluntarily confess a Faith in *Mahomet*, and suffers circumcision, (which often happens by the heavy yoke and burden of their Tribute) this Man is led through

through all the Streets and open places of the City, to the great joy and honour of the people, with acclamations: him also they present with gifts, and after free him from all Tribute. For covetousness of this profit, many *Greeks* and *Albanes* become circumcised. But if any be forced thereto, as he that shall strike or otherwise disgrace a Mussulman, or blaspheme *Mahomet*, (as it befel a certain *Grecian Bishop* which I did see) that man is circumcised, and hath nothing presented to him, yet shall be freed from Tribute, as others circumcised.

Of their Priests.

Their great Mufty (as the Pope among Catholicks) cannot erre, and is the highest Minister of all Religious and Lay Persons: an Officer of great power and trust: his conclusions and sentences in State and Church-affairs, are irrevocable; and his person held in most esteem and reverence next the Emperour: his habit most in green, being *Mahomets* colour. There is small difference between their other Priests and Laymen, nor much from the Governours of Ceremonies (such as our Bishops are) neither is much learning required from them: it is sufficient if they can read the *ALCORAN* and *Musaph*; yet they that can interpret on the Text, are esteemed most Learned, because the Traditions of *Mahomet* are written in the *Arabick*, not vulgar Turkish Character; and they hold it most detestable, to have them interpreted in the vulgar Language. These Priests and Governous are elected by the People; but their rewards and stipends for their labours, are

paid

paid by the King. They have Wives, and Habits like Seculars: and if their ſtipends be not ſufficient to mantain the number of their Children, they otherwiſe ſupply themſelves by Handicrafts & Trades, or what elſe befits a free-man; as teaching Schools, tranſcribing Books, *&c.* I ne'er could ſee amongſt them any Printers; but Paper is there very well made. Some make profit one way, ſome an other, as Taylors, Shooemakers, *&c.*

They have likewiſe Monks of ſeveral Orders; but chiefly of theſe three: the firſt have no propriety in any thing; they go almoſt wholly naked, ſaving their privities covered with a Sheeps skin, and in cold weather they uſe the like to cover their backs, their ſides, their feet and hands are never covered. They beg alms as well of Chriſtians as Turks; and, *For God's ſake.* Theſe Monks having eaten an Herb called *Maſtach*, are poſſeſt with a kind of fury and madneſs; they cut and wound their breaſts croſs and overthwart, and ſo their arms, diſſembling all trouble or pain; then clap on their heads, hands and breaſts, the ſpunge or muſhrooms of old Trees light burning, and not remove them till they are reduced to aſhes. Another Order I have ſeen, who go with their privy part bor'd thorow, and a Ring included therein of the weight of three pound; and this to preſerve chaſtity. The third Order is rarely ſeen abroad; but remain both day and night in Churches, where within ſome little Angles they have ſmall Cabins, no ſhooes, veſtments, or coverings of the

Of their Monks.

the had, wearing nothing but one shirt: their exercise is fasting and prayers, that God would reveal things future to them. With this sort of Monks, the King of Turks usually consults, when he intends a motion on expedition to War.

Their reverence to *Mahomets* traditions.

They give so much respect to *Mahomets* Traditions and Statutes, that not onely they never blaspheme God or his Prophet; (which amongst us sometimes happens) but if they find the least leaf or scrowl thereof, lying on the ground, they take it up and often kiss it, and place it on some shelves or chinks of walls; affirming it a sin, to suffer that wherein the Name of God, and Laws of *Mahomet* are written, to be trodden under foot. And no man dares to sell the Alcoran, and other writings of their Law, to any Christian, or any other differing in Religion or Faith with them, lest they should be trodden on, or touched with unclean hands: and whosoever should so do, is severely punished. And in this regard they may be stiled far more reverent then Christians.

Of their Schools.

They have places for Instruction, and Teachers both of Men and Women: in several Towns, Men the Boys, and Women the Girls, some teach Astronomy, Physick; and some the Art of Poetry; which when they do, they speak out with loud voice; and moving their hands unto their sides, they pronounce their meanings. They understand no artificial Musick, but frame Verses to certain Rules, which consist of eleven syllables. The hotness of the Clymate, and often

often ſickneſſes, makes moſt inclined to Phyſick, wherein they have ſome ſmall knowledge. They learn Aſtronomy, to be thought able to tell fortunes. Printing is ſupplied by a number of writing Prieſts: and perhaps neglected (as all learning is) to maintain the peoples ignorance, and keep them off from ſearch into the groſs abſurdities of their conſtrained Religion.

They marry without Vows or Oaths, take Wives without portions, and for the moſt part buy them, contrary to the Roman cuſtom, where the Son in-law was bought with Money to take a Daughter. This married Woman carries nothing with her for uſe or ornament, which ſhe is not forced to redeem or purchaſe from her Parents. Evil manners or ſterility, are cauſes of Divorces: for which there is a peculiar Judge. They permit their bond-men or purchaſed ſervants to marry; but the iſſue of them are all born ſlaves. The Alcoran perſwadeth marriage as pleaſing God and Man; and it allows plurality of Wives and Concubine, as many as a Man pleaſeth. The Turk amongſt his (whereof he hath above five hundred in his Seraglio's,) nameth her for his Wife or Sultana, by whom he hath his firſt-begotten Son. All their Wives are uſed with equality of reſpect, in diet, cloaths, returns, and what concerns them; and are moſt obedient to their Husbands. They nurſe their own Children, and bear them on their Shoulders, not in their Arms: no men, but Eunuchs are ſuffered to be with them, not their own Sons, if above twelve years of age: they

Their marriages

they never go abroad, but accompanied with onely Women.

Of strangers.

Pilgrims of several Nations travel to visit holy places, which the Turk possesseth; as *Mecca* and *Medinum*, (as Christians, *Jerusalem*) where they say *Mahomet* was buried: but this is done as well for gain and profit, as for devotion or Religions sake. And there having seen a gilded Shoo hanging from the roof of the Church, and bought such fine linnen and cloth as they please, they return home with great advantage; some carrying about the streets water, from thence in glases for devotion sake, and freely give it to any that are thirsty; others do the like for profit. And if any one of them happen to die in this Pilgrimage; by what occasion soever, although he ne're arrive near *Mecca*, yet he hath the estimation, and shall be placed in the rank of Pilgrims.

Miracles done by *Mahomet* at *Mecca*, which they say he still doth in these times.

I know not whether I should call them Miracles, or rather Monstrous Toys, written in their Book called *Mehemidine*, wherein they are perswaded, that when *Mecca* was a building, God by the prayers of *Mahomet*, commanded divers mountains to bring their stone to the Fabrick of that Church, every Hill his tenth: and when divers Mountains had brought their portions, and *Mecca* built and perfectly compleated, a certain Hill called *Araphat*, and some other more remote, coming thither with their tenths somewhat too late, and finding *Mecca* built, and no use of their stones, they begun most bitterly to weep; which when *Mahomet* perceived Hills so distressed,

distressed, and understood the cause, he said unto them, *Be of good chear, weep not, but store your tenths up in a place which I shall shew you; and whosoever shall not pray upon your stones, his pilgrimage shall be unprofitable and unaccepted.* And after so doing, *Mahomet* struck the stones with his foot, and there issued out Water, not useful to drink; and imposed a name, and called it, *A Water of Purification*, whereof every Pilgrim carrieth at his return, some portions thereof in vessels; and when ever any die, the vestures wherewith the body is to be covered, are sprinkled with this water, for remission of their sins. And they further affirm, That no man can come to *Mecca*, whose visit is not known to *Mahomet*, who reveals the persons to the Keepers there (all Eunuchs:) and if a Pilgrim come, a Ravisher, or wicked Man, a Christian or any of Religion different from theirs; these said Keepers forbid him entrance into *Mecca*. But the body of *Mahomet* is not there, as some affirm, but onely an imaginary form in the Wall of the Church, expressing the lineament of a body, which is often kissed; and so they return home again. Such lying follies, for miracles, these Infidels are possessed with, concerning *Mahomet*; and divers others, so ridiculous, as I omit for modesties sake; yet must advise the Reader, if he please, to interrogate any Turk therein, and he will finde I have spoke nothing but meer Truth.

Of their Alms.

The *Alcoran* obligeth men to Alms, as meritorious, and much pleasing God; and saith,

The contrary comes from the Devil. They have Hospitals for poor travellers, built by the Wills and Legacies of their Kings; where they have meat in different manners: some allow Rice with flesh, others prepare Wheat-bread, and water to drink; but for rest or lodgings, there is no place allowed: yet there are some few publick receptacles, where they are received without charge, or other bedding then straw or hay; but they repose under a good roof.

Of their Sacrifice. Their offerings or oblations are for the most part upon promise or vows, in sicknesses or other dangers; and then they kill an Ox or a Sheep, according to their abilities, and promise to sacrifice it in some certain place. This Offering is not burnt, or placed on an Altar, after the custom of the *Jews*; but the Beast being killed, the skin, head & feet, and a fourth part of the flesh, is given to the Priest; another part, to the poor; a third, to neighbours; and the remainder they keep for themselves and friends to rejoyce withal. Neither are they tyed to perform these vows, unless they escape the disease or danger for which they intended them; all things with them being conditional; *I give you, if you give me.* And the like is observed by the *Greeks*, *Armenians*, and other Asiatick people, even of the Christian Faith.

Of their Wills and Legacies. If any of their Musselmen make a Will, their Legacies are given before Friends or Neighbors; and they are commonly for cutting Water-courses, for conveying Springs from some remote places to Hospitals, Churches, or dry habitations; and that for Piety sake, & their souls benefit.

Others

Others give money to free bond-men out of thraldom. But women for the moſt part (as moſt ſuperſtitious) bequeath their gifts to Souldiers, for a certain ſlaughter of Chriſtians, which they conceive to be greatly beneficial for their ſouls. The Legacies of their Kings are for the building of Hoſpitals, Churches; and ſo likewiſe are thoſe of eminent and great perſonages.

When any of their Muſſelmen die, men take the Funeral-care of men, and women of women. They waſh the departed body very clean, & wrap it in fine linnen; then they carry it out of Town, into ſome remote place, (for they hold it ſinful to bury in their Churches.) Firſt, Friends of the deceaſed & Prieſts meet and go in progreſs, certain Monks bearing Wax-candles; then follow ſome of their Prieſts ſinging till they come to the grave, ſhaking their heads, & often turning round, fall down with giddineſs, as in a trance. The better ſort have their graves lined with boards at bottom and at ſides, and covered with boards, on which they throw the Earth, & ſtrow ſometimes the ſeeds of flowers thereon. Great men & Baſſa's have peculiar Chappels for themſelves and Kindred. The poor are buried by high-ways, or in open fields. If the deceaſed be of poor ability, there is then money gathered for ſatisfaction of labour for thoſe religious men, which is offered in the ſtreets. Ceremonies of the dead.

Over this ſtately Tomb, (being Prince-like) there is erected a goodly Temple, wherein their Kings are buried in the City with *great magnificence*. Both *rich* and *meaner* have an Altar built of Of the edifice of a Sepulchre called *Turbe*.

ſuch an height, as beaſts cannot annoy or pollute it with any foulneſs: thither with lamentations and weepings they often return; and ſpread upon the monument ſacrifices of meats, bread, fleſh, cheeſe, eggs, milk. This Solemnity or Funeral-ſupper continues for nine dayes after the parties buriall, (according to the Heathen manner) for the ſoul of the departed: and it is left to be eaten by the Poor, by Ants, or Fowls of the Air. They ſay, *It equally pleaſeth God, to give Alms to Beaſts that wants, as men, when they are given for Gods ſake.* I have ſeen many buy Birds in cages at good values, only to ſet them at liberty, and ſee them flie away, others, throw Bread into Rivers for Fiſhes, and that for the love of God, ſaying, That *ſuch charity towards the needy, doth obtain a great reward from Heaven.*

Concerning War.

The Turks have all one Emperor or King, of the Race of *Ottoman*; who hath next to himſelf in Authority two Sanjacks or Vice-roys, chief Governors, the one of *Europe*, the other of *Aſia*; and theſe have under them Lieutenants of leſſer quality, who command the ordinary Souldiery; and if they fail, being called to any expedition, are preſently puniſhed with death. He hath others alwayes following him, as Councellors, Guardians of his body, ever neer him; Chamberlains, Chancellors, and Exactors of Tribute, for monies and young people, with certain numbers of light-horſe, Meſſengers, and divers others that continually follow the Court. His greateſt ſtrength is in his ſlaves; Children (for the moſt part) torn from Chriſtian Parents,

with

with Tribute-Children, bred and educated in ſeveral Seraglio's, Captives taken in War, and Renegado's. Of theſe, ſome are trained up, and ſerve on Horſe; who have a double ſtipend to the foot, and always ready at command, in ſtables keeping four hundred Horſe together. The great body of Foot-Souldiery are the Janizaries, all commanded by a Chief, called their *Aga*, a perſon of mighty truſt, and like importance; who hath under him diverſe inferior Commanders, and have Seraglio's apart. Of theſe, and Auxiliary Forces, the Turk can draw three hundred thouſand into the field. A great part of theſe Janizaries attend the Court, Ambaſſadors Houſes, and protect all Chriſtian Inhabitants and Travellers, for rewards; and are faithful in thoſe employments. Their Standard in the field, is an Horſe-tail tied upon a Pole; an Emblem of their firſt barbarity and rudeneſs. His ſtrength at Sea is not conſiderable, conſiſting moſt in Gallies, and thoſe not equal to ſome Italian Princes: nor hath he many for want of ſlaves whom he imploys more for Land-ſervices. The beſt of Shipping, is under the Baſſa's of *Algier* and *Tunis*, whom he manageth with much policy; ſometimes as Rebels, and ſometimes as good Subjects, to his beſt advantage againſt Chriſtians: for if they complain of loſs, the Turk then ſays, *He cannot rule them.* If the other do the like, he'l take treble damages.

The condition of Noblemen.

There is not any of thoſe great perſonages that poſſeſs by right of inheritance any Pro-

vince, City or real estate, to derive unto his children or successors, without consent of the King. If any of their Dukes or Princes desire possessions, it must be with this condition; the value of the place or Territory is first considered, and the revenues thereof, whereby the Turk apportioneth what number of Souldiers that can anually maintain: then the Lord is injoyned always to keep in readiness that number, for any his commands; and in default his head is lost: nothing can excuse his presence in any commanded place, but known want of health & sickness. And whensoever it please the Turk to ease him of this benefit, it's at his liberty; but if not deprived, he enjoys it during life: after death, if his Successors will observe the same conditions, they are often admited; if not, 'tis then disposed to others. And if it happen any one of these great ones have occasion to speak unto their King, it is with eys fixed on the ground, they dare not look him in the face.

Of *Bassa's*, who may be called Counsellors, Chancellors, or Secretaries.

These for the most part are all Eunuchs, castrated when youths, and bred in Seraglio's, for attendants on the Turkish Concubines: and of later years, some of them (as I was informed, being a slave to a great man in *Constantinople*) are cut so close the body, that they often dye by the incision; and if live, they ever after use small Pipes for discharging their water: such is their cruel jealousie, introduced (as 'twas said) by an Emperor that perceived a Gelding leap a Mare; these Bassa's are of greatest esteem with the *Turk*, next to the Sanjacks; and they are almost all that

are

are preferred to that dignity, children of Christian parents, violently taken from them: & none of them, although he hath to wife a daugheer of a Turk, (as *Hurſtan* Baſſa had) can enjoy a Pariſh, Caſtle, or Village by inheritance; but if he be promoted to any dignity or poſſeſſions, he enjoys it till his death, or ſo long as the Turk pleaſeth. Each Baſſa hath a Court of Juſtice in the province he commandeth, from whence appeals are to the King, or great Muſty; whoſe ſentence is concluding and immoveable.

The obedience of Turks to the King.

None of their Janizaries or great Captains have licence to wear Swords or other Arms within the Cities, unleſs the King go forth his Palace, for Devotion ſake or Hunting. And where there are Magiſtrates or Governours of Towns, Porters carry with them ſtaves or Clubs: & finding any quarrellings or offerings at injuries, they preſently puniſh them with thoſe inſtruments; No man ſpeaks to them, or dares look in their faces; but falling on the earth, kiſs their feet, with eys to the ground, & ſpeak as to themſelves. And whenſoever they ſend forth meſſengers with letters to Governours, cities, or provinces, whoſe horſe grows faint by journeying, this meſſenger hath full authority to diſ-horſe whom ere he meets; and meeting none, he turns into the next town or village, & repairs to the chief Officer; & if he preſently provides him not an horſe, he's hang'd before his door: and for this cauſe, many make uſe of Aſſes, rather then horſes. And when this meſſenger ſhal come to whom he was ſent, he is moſt honourably received, his Letters kiſſed

with great humility, and their contents answered with incredible celerity and quick dispatch. No Princes dare contradict one sillable therein. None dare (as here) rebel; all men live in such awful fear and trembling: Tortures and present death depending on his will.

The Turkish strength, how diminished.

The Emperor distributes in some equality all Provinces to his Noblemen; but with condition, that such a Souldiery should be continually maintained by him with the Revenues of that Province, both in time of Peace and War. A Souldier killed is not loss to him, unless the Province likewise be lost, as for example, the Turk hath now four hundred Souldiers, whereof one hundred is maintained by *Hungary*; now if he lose *Hungary* those Souldiers are lost: if he lose no Province, he loseth nothing; for he can raise more in their rooms; as Church-Officers, or Benefices, easily find in vacancies Successors.

The condition of *Chazilars*.

These are stout Souldiers, and excellently versed in military affairs, who in their first encounters break their Lances, without other Armour then a Sword, Lance and Target, using it as we do with Coat of Fence and Helmet; the Lance being broke they use the Sword, and fight valiantly, always aiming at the head or hands, and think it ignominious to thrust at their adversary, or an horse with point of Sword. These men spend all their lives and hopes under the protection of a Goddess, Fortune; having a Proverb with them, *What is written will befall them*; that is, What that Goddess hath

printed

printed on the head at each mans nativity, cannot be poſſibly avoided, though he were preſerved in a Caſtle unexpugnable. The actions of theſe men are writ in verſes, and ſung by all men; that others ſtirred up by like praiſe and honour, might with like audacity, advance againſt an enemy, courageouſly and valiantly: and for each victory of theſe men their ſtipends are doubled; and are obliged attendance on their King, on horſe-back, with Lances, Swords, and Iron Clubs: ſome have Targets, ſome none, and are paid as well in Peace as War.

Their firſt are Bowmen, with Arrows, Bows and Javelins; they are diſtinguiſhed from Janizaries by coverings of the head. The ſecond is of Janizaries, who inſtead of Bows have Guns, with ſhort Hatchets: all theſe are gathered from amongſt Chriſtians living under Tribute, by force ſnatched from their Friends, being young, Circumciſed, and educated as aforeſaid. Theſe fight moſt valiantly againſt Chriſtians, yet have but ſlender ſtipends for their maintenance; ſome four, five or ſix Aſpers a day; of which ſixty make a Crown Engliſh. And theſe are prohibited on pain of death to come on horſe-back, unleſs ſick. There are ſome few likewiſe Sons of Turks, made Janizaries. There is a third Order, whom they call Azaplars, whoſe ſtipends determine with the War, and are all Sons of Turks. Theſe uſe a longer Lance, with Swords, and red Hats or Bonnets, or other coloured cloth, with crooked

The order of their foot

Angles

Angles like half Moons; and so distinguished by Arms and Habit, from the other orders, There is a fourth of the Grecian Sect, who have no other stipend, then freedom from paying Tributes and Tenths. They commonly attend the Turks horse of pleasure, keeping them at their own charge, and well managing them for War.

Of the Turks Pavilions.

When the King removes from *Constantinople*, to any Expedition of War, he carrieth with him double Tents, that when one is planted this day, the other is carried to the next station, ready to receive him the day following: the number and magnitude of these Pavilions is such, that afar off they seem no less then Cities: round about the King's Pavilion, are the Tents of Princes and great Men, encompassing his in circle. Then the horse-men of Arms, two or three together, have their Tent: the foot-men have the like for discipline sake, and to keep them from cold Air. When the body of the Army moves, Yeomen foot-men clear the ways, and here and there make heaps of stone, or piles of wood, for ease and direction of the passage; so as even in darkness of the night they can hardly erre. The Army moveth at midnight, and till mid-day following marcheth. The King rides between two Bassa's talking with him, before whom marcheth some of the order of Janizaries on horse-back, bearing lighted Candles in time of night. Certain Captains follow them with iron Clubs round pointed, who keep off men from sight of the King a good large distance: amongst these, are numbers of the King's Guard; and amongst them,

a

a Chariot of Women and Boys, fitted for the uſe of the Turk and his Nobility. Theſe great Men, go ſome before, ſome follow theſe Captains with great multitudes of Souldiers, horſe and foot, and all conditions; ſome for ſtipend, ſome for plunder; but all, men.

Then follow a multitude of Camels, Mules, Horſe, and ſometime Elephants, laden with Victuals, Pavilions, and all neceſſaries for military uſes; and where the Turk pitcheth his Tent, there every one, according to his condition, (as in a City) ſets up his habitation; Booths for Taylors, Bakers, Butchers, Sutlers, and all ſorts of Victuallers: ſome ſell dainty fleſh and fowls; and when freſh meat cannot be had, then what is brought upon their Beaſts, they expoſe to ſale; bisket, dry meats, cheeſe, curds and milk. All Turks are generally moſt patient in ſuffering hunger, thirſt and cold. They ſeldom lodge in Towns, but field it in their Tents, neer water-ſprings, Rivers or Meadows, taking more care of their cattel then themſelves; content with little and courſe diet, curds mingled with water, bread with milk, ſometimes bisket: maſter and ſervant eat together. They keep deep ſilence in the night; they neglect ſtirring after fugitives, for fear of raiſing clamours; which are forbid upon great mulcts and puniſhments: but when they go to reſt, or riſe to march, all with an unanimous noiſe, cry out, *Allah, Allah, Allah*, that is, *O God*, thrice repeated. Their carriages of Beaſts.

There.

Of juſtice exerciſed in War.

There is ſo much ſeverity in military Diſcipline, that no Souldier dares unjuſtly ſeize on any thing of anothers; for if he do, he dies without mercy. They have amongſt them certain Guardians, Defenders of all Paſſengers from Souldiers violence, with boys of eight or ten years old, carrying bread, eggs, fruit and Oats, and ſuch like things to ſell. Theſe Guardians are bound to free and preſerve all Orchards, Gardens, Cloſes they paſs by; ſo far, that they themſelves dare not touch an Apple, Pear, or Grape, or any ſuch like thing, without the owners licenſe; otherwiſe they loſe their heads. When I was preſent in the Turkiſh Army in an Expedition againſt the *Perſian*, I ſaw a great Commanders head, with Horſe and Servants, all three cut off, becauſe that horſe had been found grazing in another mans paſture unſatisfied for.

Celebration of a Turkiſh Victory.

When a Conqueſt is declared, the Cities ſtraight throw themſelves into all delights and joyings. At entrance of night, for good auſpice of the ſolemnity, Torches, Wax-candles, Lamps, Fire-brands, Fire-works, and all things that give light, are every where diſpoſed of throughout the City; with Carpets, coſtly Hangings, Tapeſtry, and Silken, Silver, and Gold Veſtments, their houſes all are covered, but eſpecially that way by which the Emperor entreth. The chiefeſt Triumph is made in *Conſtantinople*, his conſtant reſidence, unleſs occaſioned by War into ſome other Region. And he is bound by Law at every three years end,

to

to undertake ſome Expedition into Chriſtian Territories, for advancing or defending his own Kingdom. I verily believe, and do confeſs, for thoſe days he celebrates for Victory, no mortal eye, (nay, not the Moon or Sun) did ere behold a ſpectacle more glorious and reſplendent, for order, number, ſilence, richneſs, ſtate and magnificence in all kinds. It is impoſſible for onely man to be exalted to a loftier degree of ſublimation, then this Pagan when triumphful.

Of their Hunting and Hawking.

No Nation under the Sun delights ſo much in Hunting as doth the Turkiſh; they'l follow game through rocky, ſteepy, craggy mountains, and that on horſe-back, taking diverſity of Beaſts; but if any chance to be killed, or ſuffocated by Dogs or chaſe, they never eat thereof, nor any Chriſtian that lives in thoſe Regions: and if they kill wild Boars, they give them to the next inhabiting Chriſtians. *Muſſelmen* being forbidden to feed on Hogs fleſh. The Turk hath multitudes of Faulkoners (above thouſands) in conſtant wages through his Empire. Their Hawks both long and ſhort wing'd very hardy. The like charge he's at for all ſorts of Dogs: nothing can move in the Air, or ſtir on Land that ſhall not be encountered, and ſeized on. Theſe charges, with the Souldiery, Officers, Seraglio's, and Court-attendances, are in a manner infinite; and yet ſupplied more by caſualities then Revenues conſtant: for he commands all mens fortunes at his pleaſure, & is the general heir of all that by nature die, or violence.

The

Of Artificers and Husbandmen.

The Country people with their Servants plow their Lands, and pay the Tenths of all encrease unto the King. Artificers maintain themselves by Trades; who live in idleness, consume in hunger. They eagerly pursue all sorts of Merchandizings; travelling the lesser *Asia*, *Arabia*, *Egypt*, & States of the *Venetians*. They have their baths in every City, where in solemn manner they wash themselves. When they make water, they wash that part; and the like, when they ease their bodies. The like is done by Women, who have handmaids following them, with vessels filled with water & when they bath, they anoint themselves with such an unguent, that within the space of half an hour, rots off all hair from parts anointed. Men and Women do the same, not suffering hair to increase: and this is done twice or thrice each month, especially when they frequent the Church; otherwise, (as violaters of sacred places) they are burnt with fire. They have divers sorts of Artificers; Taylors, Shoo-makers, Gold and Silver-Smiths, and for all sorts of Metals; Painters, Carpenters, Stone-cutters; but not of such wits and exquisite inventions, as in our parts.

Of Justice among Citizens.

They have one Judge as well of Christians as Turks, (but alwayes chosen from amongst the Musselmen) to administer equal right to all men. If any kill another, he suffereth death: If he steal, or violently taketh from another, he is hanged; as it happened to a Janizary, who drunk milk of a poor Woman's, brought to sell, and paid not for it; and accused before the Judge, denied the fact; whereupon, being stretched up by

by cords at his feet, and about his middle, he forthwith vomited the milk, and was immediately by the Judge commanded to be ſtrangled: this happened in my preſence at *Damaſco*, when I travelled from *Armenia* to *Jeruſalem*. If any commit adultery, the Man is caſt into ſtrict priſon; yet after divers months may be redeemed: The Woman is carried about the ſtreets riding on an Aſs, beaten naked with whips, ſtones thrown at her, and a Bull's pizzle tyed about her Neck. He that gives a blow, is cut croſs the face, and led about the ſtreets for terror. All ſuits have this good piece of Juſtice, that right or wrong they laſt not above three dayes. Their differences are few, becauſe they buy and ſell for ready money; their chiefeſt wealth conſiſting in it: for few have Lands or Revenues, but who command the Souldery: but generally the Turks Law and Equity is in his Sword, and both oppreſſed and ſtifled with Fear and Bribery, two potent and prevailing Agents. To ſpoyl, to rob, to kill, to murther, upon deſign of intereſt, he ſays, *'Tis Juſtice*; devaſtation and deſtruction of whole Provinces and Kingdom, he calleth *Peace*. And if in ought he adviſe with Counſel or the great Muſty, 'tis not for ſubſtance, but formality of Juſtice, as well aſſured from gainſaying or oppoſition.

Both Chriſtians and *Muſſelmen* Manure and Till their Grounds, Vineyards and Paſtures, and have like Fruits and Corn to ours; Wheat, Millet, Barley, Oats, winter Wheat, Peaſe, Beanes, and alſo the like kinds

Of Husbandry.

kinds of Pulse, and Rice in abundance; Linnen, and Cotten Wools, more then these Nations; Vineyards like ours; but use their Grapes in indifferent manner: where we make Wine, the Turk hath a kind of Honey with them; so medicining their Grapes, that both in taste and colour they appear always fresh: other Fruits they have in great plenty; Melons, Cucumbers Pumpeons, repleniſh well their fields and Gardens in their Seasons: Nuts, Pears, Apples, Peaches of all sorts, Apricocks, Chesnuts, Figs, Lemons, Oranges, Cherries, and such like, at small rates, but not in equal plenty in all Kingdoms: And there are some within the Turks Dominion, as *Cappadocia*, and lesser *Armenia*, where in regard of cold, they have no such like Frutages.

Of diversity of Cattel.

They have Shepherds, (whom they call *Sobanlars*) always living in solitary places, and every month remove their stations: they neither have possessions or houses, other then their Tents, and Cattle; as Camels, Mules, Horses, Cows, Oxen, Sheep, and Goats; whom they feed, make Cheese and Butter; sheer the Wool, and so make Cloaks, Mantles, and Tapestry, which they sell, and supply thereby their Families with Corn and necessaries. All these Shepherds pay the King tenths of all anual encrease; and all Christians further pay Tribute, that live under the Turkish Government, for every Male, one Crown yearly; and that which is most cruel, their Sons unmarried are taken forcibly from them every fifth year, when their Tenths are visited.

They

They have no great magnificence of buildings; moſt of them are of bricks, but differing; ſome are burned in Furnaces, ſome dryed by Sun. Their Houſes are contiguous, like ours in *Europe*: but in *Natolia*, they are flat tabled without elevation; from whence by Gutters, Pipes, and Chanels, Rain-water flows down to them. The houſes low; none above two ſtories, and meanly furniſhed, if not poorly. Of houſes.

Their Veſtments are made of Wool, Flax, and ſpun Silk, ſufficiently magnificent, They uſe a Garment (which is called *Chaucan*) ſtraight, full of plates, and of length even to their ancle; abhorring breeches, as too much directing to, and expreſſing privities. Their ſhirts or ſmocks are dyed in colour violet. Their heads are covered with great rolls of Callico or ſuch like ſtuff, wound about in faſhion of Pyramids; which they call Turbants. Women of quality go always with their faces veiled; which are never ſeen of ſtrangers, or in publique places. Their Shooes are high, with ſtrong ſoles, for longer ſervice both of men and women. Some ſay that *Mahomet* had a bald or ſcalded head, which he covered with white linnen rolled up, as their *Turbants*, from thence derived and ſtill continued, for they never alter faſhions. They wear long Beards, as tokens of their freedom, all ſlaves being ſhaved. No great difference in habit between rich and poor; but in the ſtuffs. They are religiouſly cleanly, and never ſeen to unburden nature, but always after waſh. Of their Garments.

Of Viands

They use, as we, bread white and course, which they sprinkle with certain seeds before 'tis baked, and yeildeth a great sweetness to the eater; which with us is onely used in *Granada*, and about *Sivilia* in *Spain*. They use much art and sauces in their Cookeries: but ordinary food is Pulse, or Rice, so thickned, that it must be parted with the hands: they feed on all flesh but Hogs. There are no Taverns nor Inns allowed; yet in the streets, divers sorts of Victuals are sold, and all things necessary for mans sustenance.

Of their Beverage.

They have three sorts of Drinks: the first made with Sugar and Honey, mingled with Water: The second of Raisons, the stones taken out, and boyled in water, whereto they add some Rose-water, and a little perfect honey; and this is to be sold in most parts thorow *Turkie*; for it is sweet, and puffeth up the belly: The third is made of a fruit (called *Beckmez*) into Must, and hath a kind of Honey-taste and colour with it; this, mingled with water, is given to their Servants. The Houses where they sell, are frequented as Osteries in *Italy*, or Taverns with us. Turks for the most part drink only water; they are not suffered to buy or swallow Wines; and who happens to be accused, and proved to have drunken thereof, his testimony, in all occasions and actions is invalid: and yet in private Christian houses, they do not abstain.

Of their manner of eating.

When they go to dinner, they first strow Mattresses on the floor, and spread upon them Carpets or pillows; some sit on the bare ground

ground. Their Tables are made of skins; and plaited, to be drawn open more or leſs, like to a Budget. They neither ſit as we do, nor lye along on elbows as the Ancients; but like a Croſs of *Burgundy*, with Legs infolded, they ſit Taylor-wiſe. They always pray before they eat, then eat greedily and haſtily, but with deep ſilence; and in that time their Wives ſecluded from them. Menſervants after twelve years age, are never ſuffered to co-habitate in houſes where women are; but under ſuch age they go about the houſes, ſerving their Maſters occaſions. Captive Women have never liberty to go abroad, unleſs their Miſtreſſes or Ladies go to Vineyards, Graves of Friends departed, Baths, or Gardens out of Town (which they often do) for recreation ſake; and otherwiſe are kept ſtrict at work in houſes, not ſuffered to converſe with other Captive Servants; as ſhall be more at large declared in the following Chapter. Their diſhes are commonly placed at ſuch diſtance one over another, as 'twere on Pillars; that each man may make choice of three, which pleaſeth beſt. They eat three times a day; but quick therein, unleſs at a Feaſt; where they ſit all day.

CHAP. IX.

Of the Afflictions of Captives, and Christians under the Turkish Tribute.

WHen the King of Turks makes Expeditions against Christians, amongst divers sorts of Merchants, there alway follow him on Camels, a mighty number of Buyers, or Scorcerers of Children or Men, who in hope of getting slaves, carry with them bundles of long Ropes, wherewith they easily tye together fifty or sixty men. These traders purchase of the Souldiery or Free-booters, whomsoever the Sword hath not devoured; which is granted them, upon condition that the King may have the tenth of what is trafficked for, the rest unto themselves to sell. Nor is there any Mercandize so profitable amongst them, nor so frequent; as anciently among the *Romans* (who called things fairly bought, their proper Goods and Rights) as just as that of slaves.

How the Turks imploy their slaves.

The Youth and Aged of both Sexes, whom Chance by tenths appropriates to the Turk, he thus disposeth; the elder in years he sells for Husband-men, who yet are rarely or cheap bought; for they seldom escape the Sword, their age making them less vendible. Young men and Maidens, they confine them in Seraglio's, there to be instructed in useful Arts for future times. But first, they must deny their Faith in Christ, and then be Circumcised. And thus initi-

DABIT DEUS HIS QUOQUE FINEM.

initiated in their Ceremonies, they diligently examine their Phyſiognomies, and the ſeveral lineaments of their bodies, and then the whole compoſure; and according to conceived ſtrength, forwardneſs of wits & diſpoſitions, they are deſtinated to learn Laws of the Country, or diſcipline of Wars; and in the mean time are allowed a daily ſtipend of two or three Aſpers, ſixty whereof make five ſhillings, which they conceive a liberal ſufficiency for diet and cloathing, until they are fitted for employments. In the elements of War, they thus are trained, according to each ſtrength: they firſt have given them a light bow; skill and ſtrength increaſing, they have a greater and a heavier; ſo by degrees they are fitted for expedition. They have Inſtructors, ſevere Exactors of their daily Exerciſes; and whenſoever they erre much from the mark, ſo often are they cruelly whipped with ſcourges. Theſe are inrolled in the order of Bow-men. Others are inſtructed and made fit for Janizaries, who have appointed Maſters and Teachers every day to fight, two together with Cudgels. Others (an horrid thing) who have more lovely faces, are ſo cloſe cut, that nothing like man is left them; and this not done without great and eminent danger to life: and if the party eſcape death, his health is for no other uſe, but their moſt wicked luſts; and after youth's grown aged, they are put to the offices of Eunuchs, to attend on Ladies, Concubines, Horſes, Mules, and ſome Kitchin-employments.

Such as are of extraordinary beauty, come-

The condition of Virgins & other women

lineſs or compoſition of body, are choſen out for Concubines; mean and indifferent Faces, are appointed Matrons hand-maids; amongſt whoſe offices ſome are ſo filthy, and ſo loathſom, as were before (though ſomewhat uncivilly) related. Others are ſet to womens work, as ſpinning, carding, weaving. It is free for none of them to profeſs the Chriſtian Faith, or hope of liberty during life. There is ſome content in hope, but theſe have none.

How private *Turks* uſe priſoners.

Hitherto hath been ſpoken, how the Kings uſe Captives; now how private men their Priſoners newly taken: firſt, they threaten them with all ſorts of menacing ſharp words, promiſes, and allurements, to entice them to circumciſion; which if yielded to, they are treated ſomewhat more courteouſly; but then all hope of ever returning to their Country is clean cut off; and whoſoever endeavours it, burning is his appointed puniſhment. Such as are thought more firm and leſs fugitive, are admitted to their Maſters military imployments, and can onely be made free, when age hath made them uſeleſs; and then he is rather turned off, then remitted orderly; or when the Maſter by hurt in War, or danger of death, bequeaths him liberty. They are permitted marriage; but their children are diſpoſed at their Maſter's pleaſure; which makes the more underſtanding ſort utterly abhor marriage. They who refuſe Circumciſion, are miſerably and unhumanely treated; of which I have had the experience of thirteen years ſufferings: nor can I expreſs in words the great calamities of ſuch people. The

The condition of ſuch unskilful men is wretched. Thoſe whoſe toyl brings profit, are only in reputation with them: and therefore learned Men, Prieſts, and Noble-men, who have lived in retiredneſs and pleaſures, when they fall into the hands of Turks, are of all moſt miſerable; the Merchant or Man-ſcourſer beſtows no coſt on them, as ſcant vendible; they walk with naked head and feet, and often their whole bodies: no new cloaths ſucceed, the old worn out: they are hurried through Mountains, Rocks, from place to place, Winter and Summer, and have no end thereof till death, or that they find a fooliſh Purchaſer, that (they think) buyes ill Merchandize; but no man is ſo happy, or eſteemed amongſt them, for Age, Art or Beauty, that being ſick will leave behind them. Firſt, they are whipped to go on; if they cannot do that, then they are put on horſe-back; and there not able to ſit upright, their bellies are tyed on horſe-back, no otherwiſe then a ſack of Corn or Cloak-bag: if he die, he is ſtripped of all his cloaths, and thrown into the next ditch, to be devoured by dogs and vultures. How *Chriſtians* ignorant in mechanik Arts are uſed.

They do not only bind them in endleſs chains, but, in their journey, alſo manacle their hands; they march the diſtance of a large pace one from another, that mutually they do not hurt; and tye their hands, leſt with ſtones they miſchief do their Maſters: that when ſometimes they lead great multitudes, as ten times five hundred chained together, the ſtrength of whom, if hands at liberty to throw ſtones, might much How priſoners newly taken are uſed.

annoy them. At night when they rest, their feet are likewise chained, and exposed to all injuries of weather. The condition of Women is a little more humane; they who have strength of limbs, are driven on foot; those more tender, are set on horses; such as are infirm and cannot ride, are put in baskets or ripiers, as we use geese. Afterwards their condition is sadder; either they are included in strong Turrets, or forced to endure the wicked lusts of their Merchants. Where still they are, is ever heard vast and hideous howlings of both sexes, suffering violations from them; neither doth the age of seven or six years, defend them from those vitious actions: a people imcomparably wicked, both against nature, and before libidinous.

How used that are exposed to sale.

At the break of day they are brought to Market, like droves of sheep, or herds of goats: Merchants appear, prizes are set; if the prisoner be liked, his cloaths are stripped off, he is viewed by the buyer, all members surveyed, tryed and throughly searched for faults in joints or arteries; if he please not then returned to the owner: and this is done until he find a purchaser. When bought, he's carried to some heavy servitude, to plow, keep sheep; omitting baser Offices. They endure there many unheard examples of calamities: I have seen men tyed together with yokes, to draw the plow. Maidens are severely forced to perpetual labours; separated from the sight of men, nor are they suffered speech or conference with other Servants.

If

If any man be taken priſoner with wife and children, him ſome great perſon willingly purchaſeth, to be imployed in his Country-houſe, in Tillage, Vineyards, Meadows, Paſtures; and children born of them, are all his Slaves: and if they perſevere in Chriſtian Faith, a certain time is allotted them to ſervitude, and then made free; their children notwithſtanding continue Slaves at the Maſter's will, and imployed where he pleaſeth; for they have no certain nor enrolled Eſtates in Lands, and ſo not aſſured ſeats of reſidence. If after making free, they deſire to return to their Country, they have Letters Patents given for their journey. But to ſuch as abjure the Chriſtian Religion, no certain time of bondage is preſcribed them, nor right of return; all hopes of their liberty, totally depends upon the Maſter's pleaſure: and when they have got freedom, they pay the Tenths, as other Turks, but freed from other Taxes with which Chriſtians are burthened.

Of Captives made ſhepherds

The Husbandman hath an hard and ſad condition, but the Shepherd far more grievous; they always live in ſolitarineſs, night and day, covered only with the roof of Heaven. The Maſter and the wife have ſome ſmall Tents; no ſhelter for the ſhepherd, unleſs at ſpare times compelled to work on Tapeſtry or Carpets. Every month they change their Paſtures, and drive their flocks from one Mountain to another. Some Maſters that have more humanity, now and then give ſmall rewards, which the Servant keeps as his proper Goods, and preſerves,

to

to bear the charge of a return to his Country, if ever he get liberty: but these largesses are seldom done, and then, but as a miserable enticement to servitude, thinking thereby to withdraw their hopes of shifting from them. To such as deny Christ, and are circumcised, knowing they dare not run away, no like indulgence offered.

Escapes of prisoners out of *Europe*.

European Slaves may more easily escape, then those sold into transmarine Regions; they pass Rivers only, that may be swimmed over; others, with great difficulty must pass the Hellespont. Such as intend escapes, usually attempt it in Harvest season, to hide themselves in Fields of Corn, and by it live. The Night they travel, the Day lie close in Corn, Woods or Marshes; and rather chuse to be devoured by Wolves, then brought back to their Tyger-Masters.

Out of lesser *Asia*.

Who flee from thence, repair to the Hellespontick Sea, between *Callipolis* and those Towers of *Sestos* and *Abidos*, now called by the Turks *Bogaz Aser*, that is, *Castles on the mouth of the Sea*, where the Waters are straight and narrow; hither they come with Saws and Ropes, cut Timber-trees, and tye them fast together, to serve and save themselves for shipping; carrying nothing with them but salt. If wind and fortune favour, in three or four hours they are wafted over; if otherwise, they perish in the Sea, or resorc'd again upon the Coast of *Asia*: if safely pass, they then betake themselves to the Mountains, and by inspection of the Pole and Star *Bootes*, they tend their way North-ward,

and

and ſuſtain themſelves with Acorns and Herbs ſod in ſalt. If many flie together in ſociety, ſometimes in Night, they ſet upon the Shepherds, and what they find of Victuals take from them; ſometime they kill, and are ſometime killed, or taken and returned to their old Maſters and Drudgeries: but the ſeveral dangers of travelling, conſumes more then eſcape, by ſhipwrack, the enemies ſword, wild beaſts, and ſtarving hunger.

The puniſhment of Fugitives.

Some are hanged up by the heels and moſt cruelly ſcourged; and if commit murther, the ſoles of his feet are all ſlaſhed into furrows, and ſalt ſtuffed in. Some have great iron chains faſtned on their necks, and forced to wear them day and night, and as long as the Maſter pleaſeth.

The charity of *Greeks* & *Armenians* to Captives.

Death and confiſcation of all ſorts of Goods, is inflicted on thoſe who undertake, procure or aſſiſt Captives in their flight, or running away; yet notwithſtanding both *Greeks* and *Armenians* ceaſe not to entertain them, being Chriſtians, to hide them, and in diſguiſes to conduct them unto ſhippings of the Venetians or other Chriſtians, and freely give them good proviſions and all things neceſſary for their journeys; nor do they ſpare or omit any kind of piety towards them; for they confeſs to have had heard the like experience from Chriſtians charity, when as they travelled for conſcience ſake to *Rome* or *Compoſtella*.

The Incantation of *Turks* againſt Fugitives.

They have certain kind of charms, which they think can draw them off from flying. The name of the Slave is written in a Schedule of Paper, which

which is hung up in his Tent or House: then with vengeable and horrible curses, his head is charged and threatned, conceiving this by the devils help, the Fugitive will be affrighted with meeting of Lions and Dragons in his Journey, or that the Seas or Rivers will swallow him, the heavens will grow dark, and these astonishments will bring him back again.

The memory of Christ by degrees lost in former Christian Provinces

There is some memory yet left of the expugnation of *Constantinople*, the Kingdoms of *Greece*, *Albania*, *Valachia*, and *Servia*, now reduced to Provinces. These, for a long time, constantly retained the Christian Faith, but the children have forgot it; and there will come to pass a full oblivion of Christ. And likely it is to fall out so in *Croatia*, *Hungary*, and *Sclavonia*, which are now Additaments & Adjuncts to the *Turkish Empire*.

The condition of the conquered.

When a Province is subdued & taken, all sorts of Goods moveable and immoveable are given away for spoil. They totally extirpate the whole Nobility; but especially the Princely issue. And when they took *John* the Kings Son of *Hungary*, & favoured him with life, it was on good advice, that if *Hungary* were lost again, they might imploy & involve him into any new incumbrances; and when the Province should be in a quiet and calm condition, then to dispatch him: for in such respects, the Turk regards neither Kindred, Father or Brother; He spares none. And if they do not kill and murther all Church & Clergy-men they take, yet they expose them to all scorn, nakedness and beggery, despoyling them of all their Fortunes, Goods and Dignities. Their Bells, their

their Organs, and other Inſtruments and Ornaments of Churches, Chappels, and Devotions, they raven and tear from the Temples, profaning them with conſecration to their *Mahomet*; leaving onely the moſt miſerable and wretched Chappels to the Chriſtians, wherein they are forbid publick Prayers, and may pray ſeemingly in ſilence: which Chappels, when either Earth-quake, Fire, Tempeſt, or Age deſtroy, they muſt in no ſort re-edifie. Preaching or reading parts of the Scripture is utterly forbidden. It is a ſin to admit a Chriſtian to any publick Office, to wear, have Arms or habit like a Turk: or elſe to uſe the recreations of cheerfulneſs, as Pageants, Playes, or Dancings. If they injure Chriſt or you with bitter or contumacious words, you muſt be ſilent, and endure it. If you ſpeak ought againſt their profeſſed Religion, you are forced to Circumciſion; and but to whiſper againſt *Mahomet*, Fire and Brimſtone followeth. If a Chriſtian on horſe-back paſs by a *Muſſelman*, (that is, one initiated in the Turkiſh Faith) he muſt on neceſſity light from his horſe, and bowing down his head worſhip him; which if omitted, he ſtraight is knocked down with clubs.

Condition of Prieſts & Fryars under Tribute.

Prieſts and Fryers are held the worſt of Men, and are eſteemed by Turks the very Sacriledge and Scandal of God and mankind. They have no benefit from Churches. Upon ſome feſtival days, a little bread is given them by poor women, and not on other dayes. They get their livelihood by carrying Wood; their cuſtom being

being to cut down sticks in Woods, lade them on Asses; and with this Merchandize, they cry about the streets, *Wood to be sold.*

The Tribute of Christians

They pay a part of all encrease, not only of Corn and Cattel, but even Mechanicks pay it out of all their profits. And then they pay another Subsidie, for every single man through a Family, each head a Crown. If Parents refuse this Tribute, their children are taken from them, and made Slaves. Others are bound in Chains, and beg from door to door to pay this Crown; which if they cannot this way procure, they are cast into perpetual Prison; and when all Duties are performed, it is yet lawful for the Turk to chuse the best amongst his Children, whom he circumciseth, and removes from all approach or sight of Parents, and breeds him for his Wars, never to return to his Friends; and so a child easily forgets both Christ, his Parents, and his Kindred; that after, if he chance in company with them, he shall not know them. No man can express by Words, the Lamentations, Cries, Tears and grievous sighs, at this distraction of Children. The Father to see his Son (educated in the fear of Christ) torn from him, and made an instrument of Satan, to oppose Christ; hurried from his Mother, to live perpetually with strangers, leaving whatsoever is dear in blood, pleasing in society, or loving in familiarity, with an everlasting dereliction; after listed in the ranks of those the *Greeks* call Fatherless and Motherless: yet many of these, although they have denied Christ, carry about them the Gospel

ſpel of St. *John*, (*In the beginning was the word*, &c. in *Greek* or the *Arabick* tongue) as an Amulet or preſervative in their Arm-pits; and with great deſire they expect the Chriſtian Sword (according to ſome Turkiſh Prophecies) ſhould revenge and free them from thoſe great afflictions and perſecutions; and that if Chriſtians do it not, whatever is the cauſe, or with what mind ſoever hindred, all very ill deſerve of Chriſtian Religion.

CHAP. X.

A Narration of a Papiſts diſpute with a Turk.

AFter I had travelled with much labour and many dangers the better parts of the world, and ſeen many pleaſant Towns and Countries, as *Socrates*, *Plato* and other Philoſophers had diligently done; at length I arrived at the famous City of *Hungary*, *Varadinum*, where by chance I met one *Dervis Gſielebi*, a skilful man in the Laws of *Mahomet*; who having diſpatched his buſineſs with the Governour, he very much deſired conference with ſome Chriſtian about Religion on either ſide. This motion of his being publiſhed by an Interpreter, and none for divers dayes appearing to encounter him, in defence of the Chriſtian cauſe, though many Religious perſons were in that Town, (ſtruck mute and ſpeechleſs at the courage of one Ethnick

Ethnick Infidel) who ſeemed to me like *Iſraelites*, that durſt not adventure on one uncircumciſed *Goliah*, provoking them. This I perceiving, and grieving in my ſpirit, that in ſuch plenty of Clerks and learned men, none was ſo well armed with Truth as durſt (though by Interpreters) reprove the inſolence of ſuch an Heathen; and fearing that ſo wicked and deteſtable a ſilence, in ſo good a cauſe, with ſo bad a man, would betray the truth, and render our Saviour Jeſus Chriſts Opinion with him more ignominious; I my ſelf, though never called to Eccleſiaſtical Function, undertook the charge of arguing this point of Piety with him; and ſo a prefixed day was agreed between us; when multitudes of people of each Religion came as Spectators of the event. The place was in a Monaſtery of *Franciſcans*, the day, *Whitſon*-Sunday, day of Pentecoſt; where he moved to me firſt this Queſtion: *Where God had his being, before the Heavens and Earth, and therein all things elſe were created?* Which queſtion, though it ſeemed to me not much pertinent to our purpoſe, yet leſt he ſhould imagine us ignorant of our great Gods univerſal preſence, I ſaid, *He then was in his own being.* But when that ſeemed to him ſomewhat obſcure, and that he did not ſufficiently underſtand it, I then told him, *He was where he now is.* Which he underſtanding, denied in the general, and ſaid, *Not ſo; but that he then was in a bright Cloud.* Which, when he earneſtly affirmed, I quoted *Geneſis*; (for they

they also read the book of *Moses*, and the Prophets) and said, *If God were in a cloud, before the Foundation of Heaven and earth, then that Cloud must be created before them both*: and upon further argument on this point, being at last convicted, he would dispute no further in it; but gave me leave to propound some Question to him; and for solemnity of that days sake, I thought fit to say something thereof; and finding these words (*In the name of God, his mercies, and the Spirit of them*) in their *Alcoran*, in the *Arabian* Tongue and Character, I desired him to read them: The mystery of the Holy Trinity. Which when he had considered, and wondred at, he said, *Christian, from whence had you this? for in the beginning of all our actions, we* Mussulmen *use these three words, and prefix them to every Chapter of our* Alcoran; *when we sit down to eat, when we go to prayers, when we wash our hands, or other parts of our bodies, these words we first pronounce; and these actions finished, we sprinkle our heads with water, and repeat these words; In the Name of God, his Mercies, and the Spirit of them.* When thus he had confessed the Truth, I desired to understand from him what he meant by the word *Mercies*: who Replied, *He understood it literally, without other signification.* Then I applied my self to the mystical interpretation, and divided it according to Truth into three persons, *the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost*, and shewed them written in

the *Arabick* tongue. And when he ſaw I had mentioned the Son of God, he queſtioned, *How God could have a Son? ſince according to their Law, and Doctrine of* Mahomet, *God had neither Wife nor Child.* To whom I anſwered, according to my weak underſtanding and capacity; *We Chriſtians call God the Father, for his Creatures ſake; being the firſt creating Cauſe, and ſole preſerver of all created, who was for ever in the ſame Eſſence he now is in, and will be for eternity; and is the firſt Perſon in the Trinity. We believe the Son* (who by *Mahomet* in the *Arabick* phraſe is called *Rahman*, and ſignifieth *Mercies*, ſo changed by him) *to be likewiſe God, not according to fleſh* (for God is a ſpirit) *born of a Woman; but of the Eſſence and ſubſtance of God omnipotent, begotten by God the Father, and ſo took humane fleſh, by the Holy Virgin* Mary; *ſuffered for us, died, and was buried, and according to the ſayings of the Prophets, aroſe again the third day, and aſcended into Heaven, and ſitteth at the Right Hand of God the Father, there to judge the quick and the dead, to render immortal happineſs to thoſe that have faith in him, and to the unfaithful everlaſting puniſhment.*

I then preſented him a Crucifix, and ſaid, *Behold this now, and ſee if* Mahomet *did unworthily call the Son of the Eternal God by the Name of Mercies, when with Armes thus ſtretched forth, he calls poor ſinners to his embraces*, ſaying, *Come unto me all ye that labour, and*

and are burthened with ſins, and I will refreſh you. And to render him more capable of the Trinity, I pointed to the Sun, ſaying, *You have a fair ſimilitude here: As there is but one Sun, that hath Form, Heat, and Light; So there is but one God and Father, who hath the Son, and the Holy Spirt, which you call* Rucahim, *conſiſting of three Perſon, equally of one ſubſtance, and from eternity coexiſting.*

This compariſon wrought in him a belief in God the Father, his onely begotten Son, and the Holy Ghoſt; a Trinity in Unity. And when he had heard my weak diſcourſes of God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Ghoſt, he much admired; ſaying, *O God, O God; I nor any of our Sect, could ever imagine, you had ſuch good thoughts of God; for we conceive you live in darkneſs of underſtanding: but by your relation, it ſeems you have great apprehenſions of him; and believe well, if you did not neglect our great Prophet of God,* Mahomet. I ſaid, *what ſhall we do with the toys and dreams of* Mahomet *? for beſides Baptiſme and the myſtery of the Trinity, which were had from Chriſtians, we know the* Alcoran *contains naught that tends to truth.* Then I alledged to him the fancies and filly trifles of *Mahomet*'s two Angels, called *Arot* and *Marot*, whom *Mahomet* ſays, that God did ſend from Heaven to miniſter juſtice unto mortal men, commanding them to forbid drinking of wine, and unlawful mixtures with women, and to ſhew the way to Heaven to no man. Theſe

Angels tranſgreſſing Divine Comandment, were defiled, deceived and made drunk by a Woman, and ſhewed to *Mahomet* the way to Heaven; whom, when God ſaw there, he asked the Angels ſtanding by, who it was that came in that ſhape thither? And the Angels telling him it was by the error of *Arot* and *Marot*; he turned the Woman into a Star, and ſent thoſe Angels chained into a Well, to be puniſhed everlaſtingly. Divers like ridiculous ſtories I related; As that of the Beaſt *Barsile*, who could ſpeak as a man, who carried *Mahomet* to Heaven, where himſelf confeſſeth to have ſeen great Angels with many heads, and thoſe ſpeaking many languages in divers tongues; which is ſufficiently fooliſh, and unworthy the name of a Prophet: but ſaid, I know not whether oppreſſed with Wine, in ſleep he dreamed to have ſeen ſuch miracles, or monſtroſities in his imaginations. And therefore when he inſerts ſuch follies in his *Alcoran*, he deſerves not the Title of a Prophet from any reaſonable man.

Having heard this, ſomewhat abaſhed, he aroſe, and would argue no further: but led me into the Temple, and ſhewed me certain Images carved in wood; and asked me, *If we did worſhip thoſe ſimilitudes of men, or adore them*; I Anſwered, *No, think not we worſhip the ſtone or timber wherein theſe figures are engraved: they are uſed and reſpected onely as records and remembrances to mens minds of the paſſions and ſufferings of our Saviour*

Saaiour Jeſus Chreſt, for the redemption of our tranſgreſſions; and we worſhip our true God in mind and ſpirit, remembred by that Crucifix; neither are you denyed the like remembrances of your great Princes and famous men, nor we of holy Saints; but 'tis to give God thanks for their examples of holineſs, and our prayers to imitate their charities and pieties.

In theſe diſcourſings, he ſpies ſome dogs walking in the Church, and doing ſomething againſt an Altar, (an evil cuſtom, and to be condemned by all) and asked, Whether it was lawful for Beaſts to enter our Churches? and bluſhing with ſhame, not knowing how to defend this negligence of Chriſtian Paſtors, I told him, it was neither lawful nor ſeemly; and deſired him to conceive it a meer negligence of Officers.

When he heard this, he commended it very much, and deſired me to inſtruct him in our Saviours Prayer, which I gave him afterward in the *Arabian* Dialect.

The Propheſies among the Turks.

THe *Turks* are exceeding credulous, ſuperſtitious, relying upon Dreams, Fortunes, Propheſies, Divinations and Deſtiny, and have eſpecial regard to the Enthuſiaſms and Freaks of whatſoever diſtracted or mad perſons, as taking them for Prophetical raptures, and as men taken up with admiration and extaſie of ſome divine and raviſhing objects; and therefore no wonder

if they do with veneration receive thoſe Oracles of their Prieſts, voiced to be dictated by their great Prophet, or ſome other perſon eminent for his great Piety and Holineſs.

Among the firſt rank of thoſe Predictions, is that of the return of their great Prophet, for which the *Moors* and *Perſians*, who have long lookt for his coming, keep alwayes a horſe ready ſadled with rich furniture, as priding themſelves, that the Miracle of the Converſion of the World ſhall be propagated upon that Horſe from their Country. To omit many more fancies of this nature.

As to their temporal ſtate and Government, they have a Prophetie in which they are much diſconſolate, *viz.* That as a *Mahomet* won *Conſtantinople*, ſo another Emperor of that Name ſhall loſe it to the Chriſtians, and that they ſhall then be brought to the utmoſt extremity; but their Prophet *Mahomet* ſhall appear to their deliverance.

They have another Propheſie relating to Chriſtendom, which is turned upon this hinge; They meaſure the continuance of their Empire by the diſcord betwixt the Princes of the belief of the Name of Jeſus, and they confeſs truly, that this diviſion is the only cauſe of their greatneſs, the which hath made them believe, that among Chriſtians, there was a bad Angel, enemy to peace, which they call *the ſtrong or powerful Spirit*, which kindling the fire of revenge and ambition in the hearts of great men, draws from their affections the good of their belief, to entertain

tertain them in perpetual diſcord; during the which, they promiſe unto themſelves a firm and an aſſured reign. So the Muſti, and the Taliſmans praying on Friday in their Moſques, demand of their Prophet the circumſtance of this bad intelligence betwixt Chriſtian Princes, to the end they may enjoy the Empire which they have unjuſtly uſurped. Yet their Propheſies do not promiſe them a perpetual poſſeſſion; and behold one tranſlated out of their language, which hath alwayes made them fear the union of the Chriſtians.

That is to ſay,

Our Emperor ſhall come, he ſhall poſſeſs the Realm of an infidel Prince, he ſhall take the red Apple, and make it ſubject to his power: if at the ſeventh year of his command the Chriſtians ſword doth not advance, he ſhall rule unto the twelfth year, he ſhall build houſes, plant vines, compaſs in gardens with hedges, and beget children: but after the twelfth year that he hath held the red apple, the Chriſtians ſword ſhall appear and put the Turk to flight.

By the *Infidel* Prince they underſtand a Chriſtian Prince (for to they call them) and by the *Red Apple* an Imperial town ſtrong and important; in the which, and elſe where the Turks ſhall *build houſes*; that is to ſay, convert holy temples to the uſe of the Mahometan impiety: for by this word *to build*, they that have commented upon this propheſie, underſtand uſurpation of the houſe s of God: *Plant vines*, by theſe

words they ſignifie the extent of the Turkiſh Empire, and the ſetling of their colonies, as we ſee in Hungary and Tranſylvania: *Compaſſing in gardens*, that is to ſay, they ſhall fortifie the towns which they have taken from their enemies: *Beget Children*, extend the Mahometan Religion, far in the Chriſtians Countries. *But after the twelfth year, &c.* within a certain time beſt known to God, his divine Majeſty, opening the eyes of his clemency upon the Chriſtians, will unite the wills of their Princes, kindle their affections with a holy zeal, and bleſſing their arms, will make them victorious over the Turk, whom he will baniſh out of the Eaſt, and chaſe into Scythia, from whence they came to be a ſcourge unto Chriſtendom.

CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

A brief View of the Tartars.

HAving thus surveyed the Turkish Dominions, it will be an acceptable endeavour I presume to give the Reader a little discovery of the *Tartar* and his Concerns, which are linked and joyned by Religion and other compacts to the Grand Seigniors, because this Nation hath been as yet much unknown to us.

TARTARIA is bounded on the East, with *China*, the Oriental Ocean, and the streights of *Anian* (if such streights there be) by which parted from *America*, on the West with *Russia* and *Podolia*, a Province of the Realm of *Poland*; on the North with the main *Scythick* or *Frozen* Ocean; and on the South part with part of *China*, from which separated by a mighty wall; the River *Oxus* parting it from *Bactria* and *Margiana*, two *Persian* Provinces; the *Caspian* Sea, which separates it from *Media*, and *Hyrcania*; the *Caucasian* mountains interposing betwixt it and *Turcomania*; and the *Euxine*, which divideth it from *Anatolia* and *Thrace*. So called from the *Tartars*, a puissant and mighty people, now possessed hereof.

It containeth all those great and spacious Provinces, which the Ancients called *Seres*, *Scythia extra Imaum*, *Scythia intra Imaum*, *Saca*, *Sogdiana*, the greatest part of *Sarmatia Asiatica*, and part of *Sarmatia Europæa*; extending it self the

the whole length of *Asia*, from the River *Tanais*, to the Eastern Ocean; taking in *Taurica Chersonesus*, and some other parts of Europe also. So that if we measure it by miles, it is said to contain 5400 from East to West, and 3600 from North to South; a greater quantity of ground then the Turkish Empire, but of less fertility and account.

This extent in easier terms stretched from the uttermost bounds of *Asia* to *Armenia*, and from *Bengala* to *Volga*, yea their incursions pierced even to *Nilus* and *Danubius*. The *Macedonian* and *Roman* Empires were never so large. But because they were rather Runnagates then men of War, wanting politick Government, and Military Discipline, sometime ruling one Province, sometime another; they rather wrought spoyl and terror to the conquered Nations, then fear of bondage and subjection, and at last seated themselves beyond the mountain *Caucasus*. After it became divided into many Principalities, yet so that the title and majesty of the Empire remained always to the great *Cham*, who took the original of this name from the great *Chingis*, the founder of this Empire.

But leaving the great *Cham* of these *Tartars*, the Successors of *Tamerlane*, to remoter affairs, supposed by very learned men to be but an imaginary Titulado, and the shadow of the *shadow of spirits*, as they call their Emperor; our purpose obligeth us only to an account of the *Crim* or *Præcopense Tartar*, so called from *Præcopia*, a chief town thereof. This Tartary is bounded on the

the East with the River *Tanais*, now *Don*, on the West with the River *Nieper* once called *Boryſthenes*, by which it is parted from *Podolia*, on the North part with *Ruſſia*, and on the South with ſome part of the Euxine Sea, by which lye the *Circaſſians*, a ſort of warlike Chriſtians, who ſell their children to Mahometans for to make Souldiers of them, ſuch as were the Mamalukes, ſuch now ſome of the Janizaries, and the Perſian ſtanding Army.

Theſe Tartars are good Souldiers for the moſt part (as their frequent irruptions into Europe do ſadly manifeſt) eſpecially at Bows and Arrows, which they uſe as dextrouſly as the *Parthians*; of late years they have been trained up to the Harquebuze, and the handling of a Scimetar. They are not to be vanquiſhed but by death, as reſolute againſt captivity, the miſery whereof they know from their own cruelties, yet at home are they more civil to Chriſtians then abroad, for they have ſome honourable thoughts of our Saviour, more then other Mahometans, which hath invited many *Greeks* and *Armenians* to co-habit with them.

As to their modern Hiſtory, and for what relates to our purpoſe, we muſt retroſpect to the reign of *Mahomet* the firſt, the Turkiſh Emperor when they grew at laſt of ſo great Power, by conquering the *Aſiatick Tartars*, which lay neereſt to them, that *Mahomet* the Great thought fit to keep them down before grown too ſtrong for him: and therefore under colour of taking in the City of *Capha*, then poſſeſſed by the *Genoeſe*

neoſe, made himſelf Maſter of the greateſt part of the *Taurican Cherſoneſe*, and the port of *Tanais*; thereby commanding both *Mœotis* and the Euxine Sea.

In the time of *Selymus* the firſt, who had married the daughter of this *Crim-Tartar* (for ſo they called him) and was aided by him with an Army of fifteen thouſand men againſt his father; The Turks and theſe Tartarians grew into a League. The chief conditions of it were, that the Tartar ſhould aid the Turk upon all occaſions, with ſixty thouſand Horſe, that they ſhould not make war with any of their Neighbours, (except the Muſcovite) without leave of the Turk; that they ſhall pay yearly to the Grand Seignior in the way of Tribute, three hundred Chriſtians; that the new *Cham*, upon the death or depoſition of his Predeceſſor, ſhall receive from the Great Turk a Royal Banner, in token of his Confirmation in that eſtate, that in reward of theſe ſervices, the Crim Tartar ſhall have yearly from the Grand Seignior, five thouſand five hundred Ducats, in the way of penſion; and ſucceed finally in the Turkiſh Empire, if the male iſſue of the houſe of *Ottoman* ſhould chance to fail. According unto this agreement the Tartars have been aiding to the Turks from time to time, againſt the *Perſians*, *Polanders*, *Hungarians*, *Moldavians*, and indeed whom not; and that with great and puiſſant Armies; the Great *Cham* ſometimes arming 150000. of his own Subjects (leaving but one man in an houſe to attend their Cattel;) and ſometimes ad-

adding five thouſand *Circaſſians*; and others of the *Aſian Tartars*.

Nothing ſo punctual is the Turk, on his part to perform the contract; who not content to have the Tartar for his friend, or at the worſt his Homager, hath of late times attempted to make him his ſlave or vaſſal. For *Amurath* the third, quarrelling *Mahomet* the Crim-Tartar for a deſign to intercept *Oſman Baſſa*, in his way from *Perſia* to *Conſtantinople*, authorized the ſame *Oſman* to war upon him: by whom the poor *Crim* and his two Sons, betrayed by ſome of his own Councellors (corrupted with Turkiſh gold) were ſtrangled with a Bow-ſtring; *Iſlan* a brother of the *Crims*, firſt ſworn a Vaſſal to the *Turk*, put into the place, and over him a *Turkiſh Beglerbeg* or *Baſſa*, to command in chief. What hopes he hath of ſucceeding in the *Turkiſh Empire*, if (poſſible) the houſe of *Ottoman* ſhould fail are doubtful, for that the Baſhaws will either alter the ſtate or provide for themſelves, like *Alexanders* Lieutenants, or ſet one of their number, or a counterfeit Brother or Uncle of the laſt Emperor, whom they will govern as they pleaſe.

What the Revenue of this Prince is, it is hard to ſay: his ſubjects have little money, and live moſt upon the bartery of their Cattel. But beſides what he hath in lands or Cuſtoms, and the 5500 *Ducats* yearly from the Turk, he hath the tenth of all the ſpoyls which are got in the Wars, and a *Checkine* for every Captive, for ſome, two or three, (whoſoever taketh them) according unto their eſtates.

As

them by the Turk, (who doth sometime espouse his quarrels;) by whose assistance they have brought the *Moscovites* to some extremities.

CHAP. XII.

The Character of Tamerlane *the Great.*

THis renowned Prince, the glory of his age for warlike atchievements, was born at *Samarcand*, the chief City of the Zagalaian Tartars, his Father was called *Zain-Cham* or *Og*, Prince of those people, who spending his time in peace, contenting himself to live upon the profit of his flocks of Sheep and Herds of Cattel, which then and also now are the principal Revenues of the Tartar Kings and Princes; gave occasion to some, ignorant of the manner and custom of those northern Nations and Countries, to reckon them all for Shepherds and Herdsmen, and so have reported this great Prince to be a Shepherd or Herdsmans Son; measuring his Nobility by the rudeness of his people, and not by the honour of his Family and heroical vertues, such as hardly to be paralleled in that or former ages.

Scarce had he attained to 15. years of age when his Father dyed, leaving unto him the Government of his Kingdom, and for his counsel in the same, he commended to him two of his most trusty and faithful Servants, *viz. Odmard* & *Aly*, whom he dearly loved whilst they lived, being

being much ruled by their directions, and greatly honoured the remembrance of them being dead, as persons from whom he had received his rudiments for his future Government. He was a man of greater strength then stature, and of far greater courage then strength; to which his policy being added, made him a most renowned and fortunate Warior. In his eyes sate such a rare Majesty, as a man could hardly endure to behold them without closing his own; from whence darted such radiant beams, that many in talking with him were stricken dumb; which occasioned him many times with a beseeming modesty to forbear looking too earnestly on those that talked or discoursed with him. He was somewhat narrow in the shoulders, otherwayes well limbed; his visage was amiable, and of an excellent proportion, but little hair on his chin; the hair of his head long and curled, quite contrary to the manner of the Tartars, who shave and cover their heads, whereas he contrariwise did wear it long, in obedience to his Mother (as he gave it out) who commanded him so to wear it in token of his discent, she pretending to come of the race of *Sampson*, which caused him to be the more respected of his men of War, they believing that in those hairs there was some rare vertue, or rather fatal destiny; an ancient practise of many eminent Commanders, to fill the heads of their Souldiers with some strange opinion conceived of them, thereby to receive the greater honour, as if in them were something more then ordinary men. Thus *Numa*

Pom-

Pompilius feigned to have received his Laws from the Goddeſs *Egeria*, and *Mahomet* the Impoſtor bewitched the people with a Pigeon which he had taught to feed at his ear, whom he perſwaded to be the holy Ghoſt, which brought him Revelations out of Heaven.

That he was of a valiant courage from his youth, his actions do declare, not dreading any danger when occaſion did require it, having fortune alwayes attending on him as his handmaid. His firſt endeavours were crowned with admirable ſucceſs, viz. againſt the *Muſcovites*, who having ſpoyled a City which had put it ſelf under his protection, and alſo entered into his Country; he thereupon met them with an Army, gave them battel, and ſlew of them five and twenty thouſand foot-men, and between fifteen and ſixteen thouſand horſe-men, with the loſs of ſcarce eight thouſand horſe-men, and four thouſand foot-men of his own: yet was he far from exulting in this victory, that beholding ſo many thouſand dead bodies on the ground, he fell on weeping at the condition of ſuch as commanded over great Armies, applauding a quiet courſe of life for the moſt happy, and accounting the other moſt unhappy, which by the deſtruction of their own kind, ſought to purchaſe to themſelves vain glory.

He was by nature a great chaſtiſer of proud and inſolent perſons, yet withal ſo juſt that he would not be moved to undertake any thing raſhly or unadviſedly, but would firſt underſtand the truth of the ſame; witneſs the time

when

when the *Mahometan* Princes of *Aſia* oppreſſed by *Bajazet*, ſued unto him for aid, to whom he gave this anſwer, *I can hardly believe* (ſaid he) *that ſo great and religious a Prince as* Bajazet, *would without juſt and ſufficient cauſe offer ſuch violence as you may complain of, eſpecially unto you his neighbour Princes, and of the ſame Religion with himſelf; nevertheleſs I will ſend an Ambaſſador to him, to underſtand more of him & his proceedings, till then I ſhall not reſolve any thing, and therefore until ſuch time you muſt reſt your ſelves content.* Accordingly he ſent an Ambaſſador unto him, with many rich gifts and preſents, courteouſly requeſting him the rather for his ſake, to deal kindly with thoſe Mahometan Princes; but *Bajazet* being a Prince of a proud ſpirit, rejected his meſſage with great ſcorn, willing the Ambaſſador to bid his Maſter to meddle with his own matters, and to preſcribe Laws to his own Subjects; adding thereunto many other words, full of great diſpight and diſdain, calling him the Husband of a Whore if he met him not in the field: So that *Tamerlane* could do no leſs in juſtice and honour then war againſt him, and having overthrown him to puniſh his haughtineſs, he ſhackled him in fetters of gold, and ſo ſhut him up in an iron Cage, made like a grate, in ſuch ſort, as that he might be ſeen on every ſide, carrying him up and down with him as he paſſed thorough *Aſia*; which, though ſome may conſtrue as an action of cruelty, yet he himſelf ſaid, *That he did not uſe that rigour againſt him as King, but rather did puniſh him as*

a proud ambitious Tyrant, polluted with the blood of his own Brother,

But as he was dreadful and terrible to his enemies, ſo none were more kind or courteous to his friends: the ſervice of his ſervant he never forgot, neither left the ſame long unrewarded, being therefore ſo mindful that he needed not by them or others on their behalf, to be put in remembrance thereof, having for that purpoſe a Catalogue always by him, both of their names and good deſerts, which every day he did peruſe like another *Titus Veſpatian*, ſaying, he *had loſt that day wherein he had not done ſome good*, yet never beſtowing his preferment on ſuch as were undeſerving, or ambitiouſly ſought after the ſame, deeming them altogether unworthy; but upon ſuch whoſe modeſty and deſert he took ſpecial notice of, that they were worthy of ſuch favours, ſo tempering the ſeverity of his commands, with the greatneſs of his bounty, that it is dubious whether he were of his Nobility, or men of War, for the one more feared, or for the other beloved, both the great ſtaies of Princes States; fear keeping the obſtinate in obedience, and love the dutiful in devotion.

Although by Religion he was a *Mahometan*, yet would he diſlike no man for his Religion whatſoever, ſo that he did worſhip but one onely God; creator of Heaven and Earth, and all that therein is: he himſelf beleiving that God was one in eſſence, and in himſelf immutable, without change or diverſity, and yet for the

the manifesting of his omnipotency and power, he created in the world sundry kinds of people, differing both in nature, manners, and conditions, yet all framed to the Image of himself; so in like manner was he contented of his Subjects to be diversly served, according to the diversity of their natures and manners, so they worshipped no strange Gods; which was the cause that he permitted the exercise of all Religions in those Countries subject to his obedience, were they not meer Atheists or Idolaters.

His Army though very great, was like unto a well governed City, in passing thorough any Country with his Souldiers, he took such order that none of the people whereby he passed, were by them any thing injured, insomuch that if a Souldier had but taken an Apple, or other thing of like value from any man, he died therefore, so severe were his commands. It is reported that one of his Souldiers having taken a little milk from a Country woman, and she complaining thereof, he commanded the said Souldier to be presently killed, and his stomach to be ript, where the milk being found, he satisfied the woman and so sent her away, who doubtless else had died for her false accusation, had it not so appeared. This severity (with some other of the like nature) was very conducible to the preservation of his Army, which was so great, that it was thought almost impossible to have found sufficient victuals for the releif thereof; but by his severe punishment of disorders, both Artificers

cers and Merchants from far Countries, reſorted with their Commodities and Merchandiſe to his Camp, without fear from every place, for which they received preſent mony, and ſo in ſafety again departed.

Thoſe Cities that yeilded to him he favourably received, but the other that refuſed to ſubmit themſelves to his obedience, he uſed with all extremity. He uſed often to ſay, that a ſmall number well conducted, did many times carry away the victory from the confuſed multitude. He rather ſought to maintain his Army upon the ſpoile of his enemy, though with ſome hazard, then upon his Friends and Allies, and when he ſent out any part of his vaſt Army, for the taking of any place, he would command them on pain of his diſpleaſure, ſo to behave themſelves, that at his comming he might either finde the City taken, or the Gates ſhut againſt him, which they ſeldom failed for to do, for he had his men at ſo great command, that no danger unto them was more dreadful then his diſpleaſure, nor did he puniſh any thing ſo ſeverely as cowardiſe, inſomuch that if in his diſport of Hunting the wild Beaſt, any one did for fear give way either to a Bear or Lyon, and ſlew him not, was ſure therefore to die himſelf, and to turn his back upon the enemy was no leſs dangerous, then to run upon his own death.

That he was free from covetouſneſs, and that ambition with which many Princes are infected, may appear by this, That after his many conqueſts in the leſſer *Aſia*, and the overthrow of

Bajazet

Bajazet, the Empire of *Conſtantiniple* being profered to him by the Emperors Ambaſſadors, he returned this anſwer, *That he was not come from ſo far Country, for the enlargement of his Dominions, already large enough, but rather to win Honour, and thereby make his name famous to all poſterity; That he come as his friend and Ally, and that his upright meaning therein was the greateſt cauſe; that God from above had beheld his power, and thereby bruiſed the head of the fierceſt enemy of mankind that was under Heaven. That unto his courage he had alwayes faith joyned, ſuch as ſhould never ſuffer him to make ſo great a breach in his reputation, as that it ſhould be reported of him, that in the colour of a friend he came to invade the Realm of his Ally. That he deſires no more, but that the ſervice he had done for the Greek Emperor, might for ever be ingraven in the memory of his poſterity, to the end they might for ever wiſh well unto him and his ſucceſſors, by remembring the good he had done them. That long might the noble Emperor live happily to govern his Eſtate; and that before his return he would ſo well conſider for the eſtabliſhing of the ſame, as that he ſhould not lightly fall again into the like jepordy, alwayes aſſuring himſelf of his good will and favour towards him.*

Having thus purchaſed an everlaſting renown by his many victories, and reſtored ſeveral Princes that had fled unto him for refuge, to their ancient inheritances; after he had long time waſted *Phrygia*, *Caria*, *Lydia*, with the moſt part of the leſſer *Aſia*, and conquered all *Syria*, *Judea*, *Egypt* and *Perſia*, with divers other great

Kingdoms and Provinces, he returned home, beautifying his Regal City of *Samorcand*, with the ſpoyls of a great part of the world before by him waſted; where he for a long ſpace reigned in great peace and glory. Afterwards hearing of the riſing again of the Turkiſh Kingdom under the *Ottoman* Princes, he reſolved for a ſecond expedition, but in the midſt of his preparations he was prevented by death, dying of an Ague the 27 of *January*, in the year of our Lord, 1402. whoſe death was uſhered by a terrible blazing Star, portending as it were to the world the death of ſo eminent a Prince, who while he lived made ſuch a buſtle therein.

The Character of Scanderbeg *Prince of* Epirus.

THis famous and renowned Champion, was ſon to *John Caſtriot*, who reigned in *Epirus* in the time of *Amurath* the ſixth King of the Turks, about the year of our Lord 1422. His father not being able to withſtand the growing fortunes of that ambitious Tyrant, delivered him with his three brothers as hoſtages to obtain peace, whom the perfidious *Amurath* promiſed to entreat well and honourably, but upon the death of their Father poyſoned three of them, only this *George Caſtriot* (for ſo was his name) whom the Tyrant entirely loved, eſcaped death. For his excellent feature and pregnant wit, he was by the Turks named *Scanderbeg* or Lord *Alexander*, and in his youth ſhewed many tokens what a rare Scholar he would prove in the School of *Mars*.

He was of a very noble generous mind, affecting liberty, and therefore a great enemy to Tyrants; but having to deal with potent adverſaries, he was forced to add policy to his ſtrength, and ſo piece out the Lions skin with the Foxes tail; for it was almoſt a miracle, that in little more then a month, he ſhould recover the whole Kingdom of *Epirus* ſave one City, out of the hands of the Turks, who had many and ſtrong Garriſons therein.

He was of ſo even a temper, that proſperity could not make him proud, nor fear daunt him, but alwayes kept the ſame cheer-

fulneſs of countenance as he uſed to do: his courage was invincible, of exceeding ſtrength and agility of body, modeſt and temperate in ſpeech; ſo politick, that he was by his very enemies called, *The Maſter of Policy*; a great cheriſher of valour in others, dividing the ſpoyl of his enemies amongſt his Souldiers, reſerving no part thereof to himſelf; nay, having taken *Muſtapha* the Turkiſh General Priſoner, and receiving five and twenty thouſand Ducats for his ranſom, he freely divided it amongſt them, which made his Souldiers not only obedient to his commands, but alſo ſo reſolute, that they feared not to ſet upon their enemies, though with never ſo great diſadvantage, reward being the Razor that whetteth a Souldiers courage, and pricketh him forward to all adventurous enterprizes.

His perſonal valour was ſeen in his combat with *Feri-Baſſa* a great Commander of the Turks, whom he ſlew hand to hand; though ſome blame this as a fault, the loſs of a General, being a general loſs, who ſhould not expoſe himſelf to private dangers, and indeed the greateſt overſight that he committed in all his Wars was ſoon after, when the Turks beſieged *Croya*, in whoſe Army he had ſo far ingaged himſelf, that he was by them on every ſide encloſed, and in great danger to have been ſlain or taken, although through his valour he broke thorough, and made an eſcape: for *the office of a good General conſiſteth not in the adventuring his perſon to manifeſt danger, but in the politick Government of his charge.*

Of

Of his great bounty to his Souldiers we have in part ſpoken before; we ſhall to that add an example of his Juſtice: *Mahomet* the Great ſent 14000 horſe-men againſt him, under the command of one named *Debreas*, who promiſed to perform wonders againſt him, but was by *Scanderbeg* overthrown, and by him ſlain, encountring hand to hand; all the enemies ſpoyl he divided amongſt his Souldiers, and gave *Debreas* Horſe and Armour unto one of his chief Commanders named *Moſes*, to another called *Muſachius*, who had behaved himſelf gallantly in that Battel, he gave a Priſoner, who by his outward part and behaviour ſeemed to be a man of ſome account. This Turk agreed with *Muſachius* upon a ranſom of 200 Ducats, and thereupon drew forth the money out of a little bag which he had kept ſecretly about him, offering it to *Muſachius* for his ranſom, who taking it, told the Turk he muſt provide more money for his ranſom, for that was his own by Law of Arms being taken with his perſon. On the other ſide, the Turk alledged the agreement, with the payment of the full ſum agreed upon. This controverſie being brought before *Scanderbeg*, he with great pleaſure heard them both, *Muſachius* pleading hard for his ranſom, and the Turk for his liberty: when they had both ended their Pleas, *Scanderbeg* told them, that they both contended for that which in right was his, and neither of theirs; for the Priſoner (ſaid he) with the money, was both mine at firſt taking him; and although *Muſachius*, I

gave

gave you the Priſoner, yet not the money, which I knew not of, neither (ſaid he to the Turk) doth the concealing of it make it yours, who by the Law of Arms had loſt your ſelf and it to me. Afterwards he decided the buſineſs thus, allotting *Muſachius* the money he agreed for, and to the Turk his deſired Liberty.

Such was his heroical diſpoſition, that when the fore-named *Moſes* had revolted from him, and joyned himſelf to his enemy *Mahomet*, divers of his friends (according to the cuſtom of the world) aggravating his offence with many hard ſpeeches before *Scanderbeg*, he could not abide to hear the ſame, but commanded them to hold their peace, and to uſe no more ſuch ſpeeches, only wiſhing that all Treaſon and evil fortune were together with *Moſes* gone out of *Epirus*. Such was alſo his clemency, that notwithſtand-the ſaid *Moſes* had with the power of the Turks given him a ſharp and terrible battel, in which he was overthrown, and afterwards being in diſgrace with the Sultan, fled from *Conſtantinople*, and prroſtrated himſelf before *Scanderbeg*, with his girdle about his neck, in token that he had deſerved death, deſiring mercy upon his knees; he preſently granted him his requeſt, reſtraining by Proclamation all people from ſpeaking againſt him, and reſtoring his goods and offices again, which by his Treaſons he had confiſcated.

One great policy for the preſervation of his Country was, that upon the approach of his enemies, he took order, that all the proviſions of

of the Country ſhould be conveyed to places of refuge, and nothing left abroad for the Turks to prey upon; by which means, proviſions many times grew ſo ſhort amongſt them, that ſtraying abroad for forrage, he with the more eaſe overcame them.

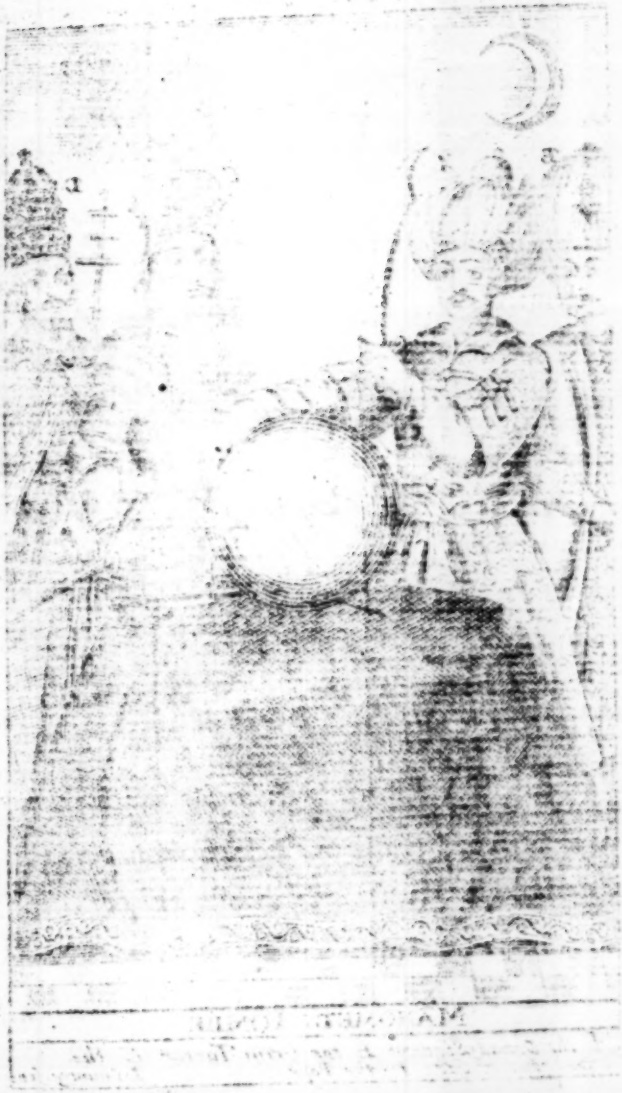
Many were the battels which he fought againſt the Turks, in all which he remained Victor, ſcarcely ever ſuffering the leaſt check, ſo that fortune ſeemed to wait upon him as his handmaid: It is reported of him, that having ſlain of the Turks in one Battel twenty four thouſand, and being informed the next day, that the remainder of them might eaſily be ſurprized if perſued, he ſaid, *O no, let ſome of our enemies live to report their own ſlaughter, and our victory.*

He having at another time brought the Turks unto a great ſtraight, they ſent unto him, offering to deliver up their Horſes and Arms, ſo that they might depart with their lives, to whom he returned this anſwer, *That as they came into his Country without his Command, ſo ſhould they not by his leave depart thence.*

Having thus victoriouſly reigned the ſpace of 24 years, *January* 17. in the great Climactorical year of his age, he deceaſed at *Lyſſa* a City of the *Venetians*, to which State he commended the tuition of his Wife, Son and Kingdom, till ſuch time his Son ſhould come of age. His death was worthily lamented of all Chriſtian Kings and Princes, he being the ſcourge and maule of the Turks, and the moſt careful watch-man and invinci-

invincible Champion of the Christians: his dead body was with the general lamentation of all men magnificently buried in the Cathedral Church of St. *Nicholas* at *Lyssa*. About nine years after his decease, the Turks having taken that City, they with great devotion digged up his bones, where happy was he that could but see or touch them; and such as gained them, or any part of them, esteemed of them as so high and precious Relique, that they caused them to be set in silver and gold to hang about their necks, or wear upon their bodies, perswading themselves, that by wearing of them they should be partakers of such good fortune, as had attended *Scanderbeg* whilst he lived.

CHAP.



MAHOMETS TOMBE

A the Grand Signior B the Crim Tartar C the Emperour of Gr: D the Pope:

I: Chantry. fcu.

CHAP. XIII.

The Modern Hiſtory of the Turkiſh Empire.

THis Puiſſant, and almoſt numberleſſe people, in their Armies and Hoſts which like *Xerxes* his Forces, drink whole Rivers dry as they march, came from moſt contemptible and petty Originals; and like the Roman Empire, which began from a collected rabble of looſe and outlawed perſons, was founded in a company of thieving ſhepheards, who wandring up and down like a running diſeaſe, infeſted and diſquieted all places they came to, and at laſt grew to ſuch conſiderable ſtrength, like a Snow-ball, that they became ſuſpect to the Monarchs of the *Eaſt*, both Pagan and Chriſtian.

The riſe of the Turkiſh power.

The firſt appearance which rendred them Famous and Notable to the world, was under the conduct and leading of their Captain *Tangroliprix*, who was called in by the King of *Perſia*, to ayd him againſt the potent and prevailing Armies of the *Saracens*, which having readily undertaken, and ſtrenuouſly and ſucceſsfully atchieved; this Auxiliary took occaſion to crave for himſelf, and erect a new principality and Empire as well upon

on his friends, whom he pretended to reſcue, as upon their common enemies territory, making both of them the equal prey of his ambition of ſoveraignty and Dominion.

This new Family continued in this Uſurpation and Intruſion with various ſucceſs one hundred and ſeventy years, to the yeare of our Lord, 1300. But ſtanding ſolely upon its own legs, neither ſtrengthned nor ſecured by any alliances, and waſted with a continual Warre with the former juſt Proprietors of the Land they had treacherouſly and forcibly wreſted, it expired its dying gaſping breath into a younger ſlip of the ſame houſe: for now the *Zelzuccian* Name and Fortune was tranſmitted to the *Oguzian* Tribe (which were the two, and onely Deſcendants of this people) whom Fate had adopted to the reſerve and reſidue of her greateſt and benigneſt Favours, which ſhe decreed to double upon it; for having made an eſſay of the formers aptneſſe to glory, and laid the dead colours in it, of a Majeſtical and Auguſt Form and Feature; drew it perfect afterwards in this beautifull and fair proportion, in which we now ſee the Turkiſh Empire.

The riſe of the Ottoman *Family.*

The Infant Darling of this riſing greatneſſe, was the famous *Ottoman*, to whom the grand Seignors refer, and ambitiouſly intitled their Sirname, who having prevariouſly obtained a ſmall quantity of ground from his Neighbours, upon proteſtation of his quiet and peaceable demeanour, partly by courage, and partly by treachery, overran the whole Country of *Bythinia*, in

in the Leſſer *Aſia*; and dying left the deſign of enlarging and extending his Dominions to his Son and Succeſſor *Orchanes*, whoſe Sons immenſe Fortune, like the *Colloſſus*, beſtrid the Helleſpont, and conveyed the Turkiſh Enſigns into *Europe*, whoſe delicious and uſeful ſoil, ſo pleaſed and enticed thoſe Conquerours, that the Imperial Seat was firſt fixed here at *Adrianople*, to which moſt of the vicine Princes were forced to come and pay tribute and homage: ſuch was the ſlaviſh condition of *Servia* and *Bulgaria*, and moſt part of *Scalavonia*, afterwards ſwallowed up in abſolute Mahumetaniſm, and made Provinces of this monſtrous Seignory.

But that which conſtituted, and was as the formal being thereof, was the Conqueſt and poſſeſſion of *Conſtantinople*, now called *Stamboll*, the Magnificent Throne of the Eaſtern Empire, which reſigned its glories to victorious *Mahomet*, *May* 29. *Anno Dom.* 1450. and transferred its imperial Title to that Regal claim, his Anceſtors had enjoyed. This irrecoverable loſſe, and lop of one of the greateſt and chiefeſt members of Chriſtianity, ſo ſtund the Greeks, and other petty Princes, who yet maintained their Dominions, that moſt of them were either ſuddenly reduced or tamely yielded themſelves, which was the fate of the *Epirots* (though they held out for a while, by the unexampled conduct and felicity of *Scanderbeg*,) the *Rhodians*, the *Cypriots*, and Iſles of the *Mediteranian* Sea; and laſtly in the Reign of *Soliman*, of *Moldavia*, *Valachia*, part of *Tranſilvania* and *Hungaria*,

whither he pierced and passed as far as *Vienna*, (and beyond it, in other parts of *Austria*) which by the fear of his approach, saw her Suburbs, and Houses, and Gardens of pleasure fired and ruined, that he might have no shelter for his men, when he should attempt the siege, which he in vain offered: but such was his importunate ambition of effecting a totall conquest of that Country, in which he had been partly successfull to the gaining of the better half of that Kingdom of *Hungaria*, and seizing *Buda* the Capital City thereof, that he made several expeditions in person, even in his old age, and dyed at his return from taking *Zigeth*, though gallantly defended to the last man by Count *Serinus*, great Ancestor to the Emperors Generalissimo now in that Kingdom. Not to mention the augmentation of his Empire, by the triumphal accessions of *Egypt*, and remoter parts of *Asia* the Great, both Nations of the same Religion.

the death of Solyman,

From the time of this *Solymans* Decease, about 1566. till now, little or no attempts were made this way by his Successors: for *Amurah* his son who threatned more then he dared, *Mahomet* and *Achmat*, were Princes given to quiet, and Home-Delights, so that most men conjectured, this Empire was at its Zenith and Solstice, and full stop, and would decline as fast as it rose; and that glory wearied with such a train of greatness, would flag at last, if not be pulled back again with the weight of them, and crush it to nothing.

the death of Achmet *the first.*

And this was concluded after the *Achmat*, when immediately followed such Convulsions in that State,

State, and recedings from those observed rules of policy, which were the security of its establishment, *viz.* the saving the lives of the younger brethren of the Emperour, as *Achmat* did by *Mustaphas*, and he by *Achmats* three Sons; *Osman* who at twelve years of age had the Government transfered to him from his Uncle *Mustapha* (who from a bookish and contemplative stoick was become an active and busie Tyrant and for that reason deposed again) and was afterward strangled by the tumultuary *Janizaries*, *Amurath* or *Morat*, and *Ibrahim* (the Father of the present Emperour) who all reigned successively, of which three, *Morat* proved a most Heroique Prince, and of as great if not greater spirit then any of his Progenitors. He dyed in 164›. at the siege of *Bagdate*, alias *Babilon*, whether he had designed the *Janizaries* for slaughter and exterpation, as being the causes and Agents of all those troubles and disloyalties which had happened to his Brother and Uncle, intended in their room to erect a new kind of standing Militia, which should be more absolutely at his command, Being asked upon his death-bed occasioned by a violent Fever (in the said yeare 164›) whom he would appoint to succeed him, he disdainfully and angrily replied. *Will there be any more words when I am dead?* He was thought to have favoured the Christians for his mothers sake, and therefore chose this expedition against the *Persian*. His immature fate was much lamented by his Subjects for his justice and temperance, and care of them; but welcomed by the *Janizaries*,

who began to perceive his drift againſt them, and who notwithſtanding ſaluted his Brother *Ibrahim* with the Imperial dignity the year aboveſaid.

Ibrahim immediately upon his Aſſumption renewed the League with the Emperor of *Germany*, which had been concluded by *Achmat* in 1612. and had been thitherto punctually and inviolably obſerved: but the Galleys of *Malta* meeting with his wealth, coming from *Cairo* and *Alexandria*, and carrying them, and one of his dear *Sultans* (with a ſon of his named *Uzman*, both which thereafter turned Chriſtians) which was on board away for that Iſland, put him into ſuch a rage, that without preſent reſtitution he vowd to attaque Chriſtendome: which immediately he commenced againſt the *Venetians*, as abettors, if not complices in the fact, upon whoſe trade and Territories he might wreak his fury, which would be ſpent in vain againſt that impregnable Iſle, which had blemiſhed the proweſſe and glory of his Anceſtors: and having rigged a Fleet, and raiſed an Army, he ſet upon the Iſle of *Candy* by Sea and by Land upon *Dalmatia*, reſolved againſt any agreement or accommodation ſoever, and with various fortune maintained the War, till the *Janizaries* tumulting again, depoſed him, and ſet up his ſon *Mahomet* the fourth, a ſtripling, and whom they might govern as they pleaſed. He is ſuppoſed to have died in that fatal year 1648. the murderous Reſolution to Princes; but how, is not certain: For ſuch is the knack of this Tyranny, that the world cannot tel, whether the Prince or his Slaves do dye the faireſt.

Of

Of the preſent Reign of Sultan Mahomet *the Fourth.*

ACcording to the uſual cuſtome and ſolemnity the Eldeſt ſon of the cepoſed Sultan *Ibrahim* was by the *Janizaries* and their Leaders and the principal Baſha's ſaluted Emperour, and with great applauſe received by the people, who were weary of his Fathers Tyranny. His Name then was *Aly Solyman*; but at his Coronation in 1656. he changed it into *Mahomet*, partly for the greater reverence of his Name, and partly for the greater fortune thereof, and the favour of Propheſie that a Prince of that Name ſhould be more victorious againſt the Chriſtians then any of his Predeceſſors.

His Mother the *Sultana* a brave woman, and who hath given very good Features both of mind and body to the young Emperour took upon her the Regency and tuition of her ſon, and the adminiſtration of the Government, where ſhee had buſied her ſelf in *Abraims* time, and was none of the leaſt motions of that change which lifted him out of the Throne, for the advancement of her ſon, the Heire of the Empire.

There had been frequent changes by death, and diſgrace of the Prime *Viſiers* in the next preceding Reignes: It is a Dignity far greater then our Lord Chancellour, for he commands ſupreamly

both in peace and Warre, at home and abroad, but of ſuch ſhort and uncertain poſſeſſion, eſpecially of late, that the Turks have a Proverb, *The greateſt Perſons and Officers in that government, are but at beſt fair ſtatues of Glaſs.* He that adminiſtred this place at the Emperours Aſſumption, was an old States-man and a perſon of good ſucceſs and conduct, and of as good age and experience, and who queſtionleſſe laid thoſe Noble principles and elements of glory and ambition in this young Monarch, which the Chriſtian world now ſadly feels. For from that diſreputation, and deſpicableneſs of the Turkiſh power, by reaſon of thoſe confuſions and inteſtine troubles, which for ſome years before had beſotted, and as was hoped, had emaſculated the Policie, Prudence, Valour, and Courage of that Empire: he at the firſt inſtant of his Government gave manifeſt ſignes of a Mercurial and Martial Diſpoſition, and with his own active *Genius*, (the example of Princes being the great Engine of worth) ſoon buoyed up the Spirits of his people to their former pitch of fortitude, and bravery of mind, awakened and reſtored their loſt diſcipline: and to whet their new fourbiſhed Scimitars, reſolved to employ them altogether againſt the Chriſtians, upon the irreconcilable quarrel of Religion, the great Incentive to Heroical enterpriſes, eſpecially amongſt the Turks, where *zeal alwayes fights half the Battle.*

To this purpoſe he reſolved to proſecute the War againſt the *Venetians*, which his Father had begun; and though at his firſt entrance upon it,

Fortune

Fortune ſeemed to oppoſe his deſigns, and ſeverely to exerciſe his glorious and aſpiring mind, with a very great defeat given his Naval Forces by Sea, the greateſt ever given them ſince *Lepanto* fight, wherein he loſt forty eight Gallies, 6 Galiaſſes, 12 Mahones and nine Ships, and his Admiral *Baſſa* ſlain in the fight in the Haven of *Foggia*, and this ſucceſs diſabling his command at Sea, he made no more of it then his noble Anceſtor *Selymus* the ſecond, who beaten at *Lepanto*, after his conqueſt of *Cyprus*, ſaid merrily, *Lepanto is but the ſhaving of my beard, Cyprus is the loſſe of a limb.*

Venetians victory over the Turks.

In the year 1654. the *Venetians* obtained another Victory over the *Turks*, having fought them two days together in the *Dardanelles*, the ſtreight of the *Helleſpontick* ſea between *Aſia* and *Europe*, famous for the ſtory of *Leander* and *Hero*, where now the Turks have two Caſtles built, in lieu of *Seſtos* and *Abydos*, made more impregnable very lately by ſome modern Fortification, for better ſecurity againſt the *Venetians*, The Grand Seignior himſelf adviſed the method of it, and was preſent at the begining and finiſhing the work: wherein he takes much ſatisfaction. At this Naval encounter no leſſe then 6000 *Turks* were ſlain, and *Amurath Baſſa*, Captain Admiral of the Port was mortally wounded, and twenty ſhips of War and Galleys taken, beſides as many ſunk and ſpoiled.

Turks fleet overthrown.

This defeat ſo incenſed the Grand Seignior, that the Prime Vizier (being obnoxious to his anger and diſpleaſure, for other matters, ſome whereof

whereof were noyſed to be of treaſonable Conſequence againſt his life) was by a private Council ordered to be ſtrangled, and he accordingly was executed; about which time the ſparks of that Conflagration which at this preſent is maſtering *Hungary* began to appear, for a party of *Turks* attempted the ſurpriſal of *Veſperin*, a Garriſon of the Emperors, which annoyed the freedome of their correſpondence; but their deſign being diſcovered, they were forced to retreat with the loſſe of 900 men, and ſo the peace continued in a kind of doubtful and ſuſpicious entertainment by both parties, who made ſlight and mutual inroads into one anothers limits, without any declaration or notice taking of a war, which the Turkiſh Governours ſtudied to diſſemble.

The death of the Grand Viſier begat ſeveral Factions in the Souldiery and chief Officers, whom he in his life time had tampered with, hoping to make a party for himſelf, and transferre the Imperial Dignity from this ancient *Ottoman* family to his own houſe, an attempt never heard of before in that Government, which hath ſhew'd the moſt awful reverence to the Majeſty of their Prince, beyond all others whatſoever.

The ſeeds of this treaſon broke out and appeared two years after in 1656. in the tumults raiſed by the Janizaries, but abetted by ſome of the Baſhaws of his Council and Intrigue at *Conſtantinople*, where they maſſacred ſeveral of the Divan (the Emperours Council and Court of Juſtice) ſtrangled the Viſier Baſſa in revenge of his Predeceſſor, forced the Sultana or Empreſs, Mother of the

the Grand Seignior, who managed her ſon, and the adminiſtration of Affairs, to fly to the old *Seraglio* for ſafety, and made ſearch for the Muphtee, by whoſe Conſent and Advice (which the Great Turk alwayes asks in matters of life and death) the aforeſaid Viſier had been put to death, reſolving to depoſe the Grand Seignior, and ſet up his Brother.

To this purpoſe they laid aſide all the former Principal officers, to ſecure themſelves from the puniſhment of their Rebellion, and placed others in their room, who had encouraged and prompted them thereunto: Theſe men miſtruſtfull of their violent beginnings, and dreading more violent ends, forbore thoſe deſperate actions and Councils which this Revolt at firſt threatned, intending firſt to ſecure themſelves, and eſtabliſh their intereſt: And thus they applied themſelves to the Sultan, with deep proteſtations of their Loyalty and dutifull Intentions, and that the exorbitant abuſes and oppreſſions of his Officers had cauſed the late Troubles, which they hoped to remove, and reſtore his Majeſty to the affection of the Janiſaries, which thoſe Miniſters had debauched from him. And to make this appear they proceeded vigorouſly in carrying on the War againſt the *Venetians* in *Dalmatia*, and *Candia*, as the moſt acceptable, and which made them likewiſe more gratefull to the people; ſo that the *Venetians* to re-inforce the places they held in *Candia*, diſpatcht away ſome new Regiments of Voluntiers & others, under the command of Prince *Horatio Farneſe*, of the Houſe of *Parma*, who did

that

that Republique good ſervice, in ſeveral enterpri-ſes againſt the Enemy; as did their General *Zen* in *Dalmatia*, where the *Morlacks*, who at the beginning of the war revolted from the *Turk*, merited alſo very exceedingly, from the ſaid Seignory:

The Grand Seignior in the mean while doubtful of theſe fair ſhews, and their pretences to him, by ſome of his truſty Eunuchs, and at the advice of his old friends, had inſinuated ſo farre into ſome of the principal of the new States-men with proffers of his greateſt favours, ſetting likewiſe before them the danger of continuing this force upon him, for that the *Baſſa* of *Damaſcus* was ſaid to be upon his march to *Conſtantinople*, that they reſolved to ſave their own ſtakes, and by a timely ſubmiſſion and diſcovery, prevent others from doing it before them: And this was almoſt done as quick as thought, and the news of it not publiſhed ſooner then by his ſolemn appearance in *Conſtantinople*, who at his return from this his joyfull cavalcade, gave order for the ſtrangling of the Ring-leaders of the late defection, ſome of whom were even thoſe who had declared their return to their obedience: ſo unpardonable a crime is Rebellion amongſt thoſe Barbarous Nations, who have no Scripture rule and Command obliging their Allegiance, that there is no place left for Repentance, in any hopes of mercie or forgiveneſs.

In this naked compoſure of the ſtate which had been diſmembred of her chiefeſt Miniſters, it was not an Act of grace or of choice to prefer, but of the greateſt neceſſity and care, to finde

ſome

ſome worthy and fit perſon for the dignitie of Viſier *Azem*, or Prime Viſier, who ſhould be able to undertake this *Corruens Imperium*, and to ſuſtain, like another *Atlas*, the tottering ruinous Fabrick of this *overpoyzed* greatneſs.

Much conſultation among the Grandees themſelves there was, who ſhould be the man Nominated by them in this hazardous and variating condition of the ſtate, to the Grand Signior, whoſe mothers conſideration of his, and the publick ſafety, had pitcht upon the aforeſaid *Baſſa* of *Damaſcus* whom not long before he had diſmiſt out of the Seraglio to that command (it being the Cuſtome to breed Chriſtian noble Children, to the number of a hundred, for the immediate ſervice of the Emperour, who according to his favour, or their abilities and parts diſpoſes them afterwards to the beſt Provinces, and prefers them to the higheſt dignities, and thoſe are called at their initiation, *Itcheoglans*, and are taught the Rules and Policies of the Government) as having perceived in ſome aptitudes to his ſervice, in the reſemblance of his own diſpoſitions, advantaged by ſome near equality of age.

This prudent perſon beyond the expectation of his years, not exceeding twenty four, couragiouſly but modeſtly accepted of the charge, and behaved himſelf ſo diſcreetly, yet confidently therein, that he *allayed* and *awed* that diſcontented and mutinous humour of the *Janizaries*, partly by extraordinary munificence, and partly by juſt ſeverity: as he gained upon the peoples reſpect by his free and uncorrupted Juſtice, ſo that of all the

Miniſters

Miniſters that the *Seraglio* ever bred, or the Go vernment produced, there hath been none exceede him therein, and his Fortune is highly paramou to them all. And this is he who at preſent com mands and manageth the victorious Army of the Infidels with that fairneſſe for which he is unive ſally famed.

Yet had he no better luck then his Maſte at his entrance upon the Government (i which he was inſtalled in *Conſtantinople* with mo extraordinary Pomp and ſolemnity) the firſt ca whereof, as to Foreign buſineſs was the equippi and recruiting of the Fleet going to Sea again the *Venetians*, who braved the Grand Seignio and the Port (as *Conſtantinople* is called) at th mouth of the *Dardanelles*, and had conti nued there a month, on purpoſe for an Engage ment.

June the 26. the Turkiſh Fleet, ſet ſail, conſiſ ing of 28 great ſhips, nine Galliaſſes, 60 Galleys and 30 Mahons, The *Venetian* Navy had 28 gre Ships, 24 Galleys, beſides 7 of Malta, and Galiaſſes, who keeping in the Channel, the Tu could not paſs without fighting.

There were two Batteries raiſed on both ſide the ſtreight, to facilitate the going out of the Turki Fleet, by cauſing the *Venetian* to deſert their ſtatio which nevertheleſs they would not abandon, b ſtood the ſhot of the Caſtles and them, and up the advance of the Turkiſh Fleet part of theirs u der the command of Captain *Moceingo*, makin more boldly to the ſhore, got a ſtern of the whol Navy, and ſo hemmed them in: after a ſharp an tedio

A great Fight in the Darda nelles.

tedious encounter, this Armado was wholly overthrown by ſword, fire, and water, forty Gallies were taken, with nine Mahones, the twenty eight ſhips burnt, the Captaine Baſſa only ſaving himſelfe with fourteen Gallies. The number of Turks ſlain, was reputed no leſſe then five thouſand, and four thouſand taken, and as many Chriſtian ſlaves ſet at liberty. The *Venetians* loſt their Captain General *Marcello*, five hundred Marriners and Souldiers, of whom the Malteſſe did brave ſervice: In room of *Marcello* the gallant *Mocceingo* was elected General by the Senate, and a chain worth two thouſand pound beſtowed on him beſides.

In *September*, the ſame yeare, the Noble Generall being recruited, following his ſucceſſe, landed and took the important and ſtrong Iſland of *Tenedos*, (the Grecian Harbour, when they beſieged *Troy*) and ſoon after took the Iſland of *Lemnos*, after a difficult ſiege. for the Turks eſteemed it as impregnable, and having repaired and provided the Fortreſſe with all neceſſaries for defence, it lying within view of the enemy, and a great annoyance to their Trade and proviſion by Sea, departed towards *Scio*, and now the hopes of an accomodation by a Treaty, which was maintained at that time by their Secretary *Bellarini*, were evaporated into the Turks fury, who cauſed the ſaid Secretary to be ſecured, and the Treaty to be laid aſide. For theſe loſſes nothing diſcouraged but rather heightned the Grand Seignior and Viſier, nor did they give over the deſigne of reducing *Candia*, which was onely feaſible by ſucceſſe at Sea, as being an Iſland, but *Mahomet* breathing nothing

nothing but Revenge and Honour, with fierce language, and ſterne looks upbraided the Baſhaws for imploying ſuch baſe cowardly fellows, and then chearfully bad them equip another Fleet: and he would deſigne and appoint the Commanders, whom his own obſervation had recommended to his choice.

In the ſame time the Land ſervice in *Dalmatia* went hotly on, but ſo as it ſhewed the Turkes had not totally recovered the uſe of their Armes; and while a greater experience could be gained He thought it not adviſeable to hazard an expedition in perſon, or venture the Reputation of his Prime Viſier, in ſo minute an enterpriſe; reſerving that deſigne till he had trained and accuſtomed his men to that ſervice, to the ſame end keeping his Army in continual ſervice in *Candia*, though with little effect. For nothing of conſequence was atchieved of either ſide, and thoſe ſmall ſucceſſes that were, were equal and mutual: now the one, and then the other prevailed, as if they bartered and exchanged Victory. For which lazy progreſs, notwithſtanding, on purpoſe to ſhew his ſeverity againſt ſuch remiſſe, and unactive Commands, though it were hardly poſſible to effect more with the force he had; upon the Iſland. He ſome time after cauſed the Baſſa, Governour thereof, to be put to death, at his return from that Government, the like fate befell the Baſſa of *Boſnia*, for his ſlow and fruitleſſe menage of the war in *Dalmatia* aforeſaid.

The turks ſeverity & policy.

Another Fleet, as the grand Seignior threatened was again rigged, and in *Auguſt* the ſame year defeated

defeated in the ſame place by the ſame Generall, the Emperour himſelf coming to the Caſtles to view the encounter, which was gallantly maintained on both ſides, and the loſſe nothing ſo conſiderable to the Turk; for that he ſet to Sea with a potent Fleet the next moneth, the *Venetians* having loſt their General by a caſual lighting of the ſhot of a tire of Canon from the Iſle of *Scio*, into his magazine of powder, which here blew him up, and other Nobles with him into the air.

The Turks get conqueſt.

With this Fleet the Turk regained the Iſle of *Tenedos*, though with a great ruine to themſelves; for the Venetian Fleet, who had braved and affronted them all this Summer, being gone to take in freſh water, the Turkiſh Fleet took the opportunity, and landed there a great Body of men; who ſtorming it, were at firſt repulſed but prepared for a generall onſlaught, the Venetian Garriſon working a Mine under the Fort, diſpoſed the Powder therein, with a Match fitted to it? when quitting the place, and getting on ſhip board, the Turks taking poſſeſſion, were blown with the Fort into the aire. The Venetian Fleet returning, and perceiving what had happened, the Turks Fleet being at hand, prepared for the encounter, which was again reſolutely performed, the Grand Seignior being in view again, and concerned in the regaining of the aforeſaid Iſland, but in fine the Venetians got the Victory, ſinking twenty of the Galleys, and taking four more; the reſt ſheltred themſelves within the *Dardanelles*. So often was that little Republick in one year ſucceſſefully againſt this potent enemy. Beſides that, it hath ſu-

ſtained their whole Naval Force (and their ſtrongeſt efforts by land) for twenty years together, without any conſiderable loſſe, and with very inconſiderable helps and ſupplies from other Chriſtian Neighbour Princes. But there is a great deale of difference and odds betwixt an united and entire State, whoſe virgin generoſity had almoſt tired this luſtfull *Leviathan*; and divided Dominions, not only by diſtances, Limits, Laws and cuſtoms, but Religion alſo, and proſtituted likewiſe to his raviſhing Armes by others intereſts, deſignes and ambition.

After his return from that ſhort expedition, the Grand Seignior continued at *Conſtantinople*, buſie in reforming his Court, and Officers, and other abuſes in the Seraglio, which by the depravity of the times, and thoſe breaches and corruptions in the State had prevailed to cuſtom; ſloth, and Epicuriſme, and Pride the mother of faction, and the ſpecifick direct bane and ruine of this arbitrary government, were extremely predominant; and corruption by bribery, to which the Turkiſh Miniſters of State are moſt ſtrongly inclined, was never ſo boldly licentious, ſo that the vertues of another *Hercules* was requiſite to purge out theſe enormities: Yet ſuch was the excellency of this Princes judgment, ſuch his ſevere Government of himſelf and commands, and puniſhment, of others, and the ſtrict execution of them, that by this he quickly reduced things to the former ſtate, denying himſelf the ordinary uſe of thoſe pleaſures for whoſe exceſſes his predeceſſors are ſo infamous to Chriſtendom.

The Grand Seignior excellent in Government

This

This ſharp and rigid proceeding with all ſorts of perſons, eſpecially the Souldiers of his Guard, putting the hard yoak of Diſcipline upon their necks again, began to grate and gall and make them to wince againſt the Government; and therefore a Perſian war was concluded; which Kings Ambaſſador had his head taken off for making a denunciation thereof at *Conſtantinople*. But a nearer European quarrel preſenting it ſelf, a truce and peace was afterwards patch up betwixt them.

The *Swede* proving very ſucceſſeful in *Poland* in 1656. & 1657. by taking moſt of the Towns and Cities of that Kingdom, and wanting men at preſent to maintain them, fairly invited *Ragotzi* Prince of *Tranſilvania* to come and take ſhare of the ſpoil, promiſing him a part of the conqueſt for his labour: To the ſame purpoſe *Oliver Cromwell* courted him; and many tranſactions of that nature there paſſed between them. *Ragotzi* no way diſliking the bargain, and being next neighbour, out of covetouſneſſe and ambition came in with a great Army, and aſſiſted the *Swede* at the ſiege of *Cracovia*, which at laſt was yielded, and put into his hands. The news hereof haſtily alarmed the Turkiſh Court; who reſenting the growing greatneſs of the *Swede*, and the ill neighbourhood they were like to have from him, if once he could fix and ſettle himſelf in *Poland*; the Grand Seignior commanded *Ragotzi*, as his Tributary and Vaſſal, (for, for many yeares thoſe Princes, like the other of *Vallachia* and

Prince Ragotzi enters Poland.

Recalled by the Grand Seignior.

Moldavia, have received their inveſtit from the Turk) to abandon his League wi the *Swede*, and to return home, reſtoring t *Polander* the places he had taken. *Ragotzi* not daring to refuſe, marched back again; and upon his arrivall was met with a Chiaux, commanding him to reſign his Principality to his Couſin *Radus*, for that he had preſumed without the Grand Seigniors command or licence to invade the King of *Poland*, and make war with a Prince in league and amity with him; and withall, to reſign his Forts, and places of ſtrength. To the firſt he ſeemingly yielded; but the other he would by no means hearken to, and thereupon making uſe of his Forces, reaſſumed his former Title, and proſecuted the Turk with open war: And at the beginning with very good ſucceſs, though his confederate the Prince of *Vallachia* was routed, and 8000 men ſlain, as he was marching to his aſſiſtance; defeating the Turkiſh Army and Baſſa of *Buda* at *Lippa*, 6000. men taken and killed, and the victory followed thirty leagues: where hearing of the advance of the prime Viſier with 8000. he retired in haſte, and making oppoſition about *Alba Julia* to the whole Force of the Turk, was there worſted: a little before which, he had vanquiſhed his competitor *Radu* (and after beſieged and taken the Caſtle wherein he had thought to have ſecured himſelf) and put him to death.

Before and after his overthrow, he had importuned the Emperour of *Germany* by many inſtance

ances at *Vienna*, to undertake the Protection of his Countrey, offering to give him caution of what Towns he ſhould pleaſe: but the Emperour delaying a timely interpoſition (yet giving the Turk occaſion of a quarrel by under-hand aſſiſting *Ragotzi* with ſome men) *Ragotzi* died of his wound (received at *Alba Julia*) and with grief, at *Waradin*: Which being defended for a while after by Collonel *Gaude* a Scotchman, was yielded upon termes to this prime Vitier, being the immediate earneſt of thoſe preſent conqueſts in *Hungaria*.

In the mean while, *Rodus* the compe itor of *Ragotzi* being put to death by him as aboveſaid, the prime Vitier named another to the Principality of *Tranſylvania* at the end of the year 1659. a Nobleman by deſcent allied to the former Princes, by name *Michael Apaffi*, (though vulgar errour call him *Abaffi*) who at the appointment of the Grand Seignior was accepted by the States thereof, when they perceived it was in vain to ſtruggle for *Ragotzi's* Intereſt againſt the whole power of the Sultan, without any aſſiſtance from the Emperour, who in this declenſion of that Princes fortune abandoned the quarrel, and left them to themſelves, nor would hearken to any overtures made to him for his protection, upon whatever termes of reſignation or Dominion, and his Envoys publickly declared to the Turk as much, who meaſuring his deſignes by thoſe fears and jealouſies which this Punctuall ſatisfaction ſignified, was the more incited to a purſuance of *The Tranſilvanian Troubles.*

thoſe reſolutions, which had been taken up ſometime before at the Port. And by this meanes *Tranſylvania* was quite loſt, and abſolutely in the power of the Turk, with ſome further advantages gained for his intended invaſion of the adjacent provinces of *Hungaria* and *Auſtria*.

The Emperor complies with the Turk.

Leave we this Kingdome for a while which is to be the Dolefull and Tragical Concluſion of this Narrative, and retroſpect to the Grand Seigniors Home-affairs, which diverted him from an immediate proſecution of his ſucceſſe in Europe; for the Baſſa of *Aleppo* (where reſides the greateſt Engliſh Factory) in 1659. broke out into a Rebellion, and threatned a conjunctory with the *Perſian*, declaring for Reformation in Government, and Religion, the latter eſpecially, having for better pretence made ſome new fangled expoſitions of the Alchoran, more to the humor of the preciſer and rigid zealots of the Mahumetan Religion.

By vertue whereof, and ſome former diſcontents which were not yet quite purged out of the Souldiery, who were diſtributed, and had their poſſeſſions in thoſe parts, under his command (for the Grand Seigniour allows each Horſe-man ſuch a proportion of ground, for which he is to be in a readineſs to do him ſervice) he had amaſſed a very conſiderable Army, ſeverall inferiour Baſhaws dependants, and retainers to the former Prime Viſier, whoſe quarrel they eſpouſed, reſorting to him from their reſpective Governments. With

With this power he marched towards *Conſtantinople*, and came on his way thither as far as *Scutary*, within four miles of that City, and thence ſent in his demands which ſwelling to that daring preſumption, as to require a reſignation of the Imperiall Title, to a pretended Son of the late Emperour *Morat*, an impoſtor of his own ſetting up, ſuch another as *Perkin Warbeck* (to whom he gave all honour, and obſervances becoming the ſtate of a Sultan,) and in his right and Title encountered and overthrew two diſtinct Armies of the Grand Seignior, that were in haſt diſpatcht to obſtruct the increaſe of more adherents, and favourers of his enterpriſe.

He continued in this poſture, like a cloud hovering over *Conſtantinople*, big with ſome ruinous ſtorm, till this ſucceſſefull Prime Viſier having amaſſed his European Forces, paſſed the *Boſphorus* into *Aſia*, with fifty thouſand men, (more prepared to follow him) being the choice of the Turkiſh power and with good ſpeed advanced after the Rebel, who knowing the courage both of the Leader, as having been his Neighbour at *Damaſco*, and the Souldiers, after a long conſultation with his council of War, reſolved immediately in all humble and frankeſt manner to ſubmit themſelves to the Sultans mercy, diſmiſſing the common Souldiers to ſhift for themſelves; which being done ſo unexpectedly, the Viſier gave notice of it by an expreſſe, with as much favour to their perſons as the caſe deſerved, to t[illegible]

The expedition of Aſia.

Grand

Grand Seignior, who gave them all his pardon with some extraordinary respects for the Bassa of *Aleppo*; but presently after, when there was no danger of the Rebellion, and all things were quieted thereabouts, at the instance of some Enemies of his at Court, but more truly by reason of State, and the policy of the Government, which never pardons that Crime, he and thirty more were suddenly strangled, their heads chopt off and set upon poles against the Emperors Seraglia at *Constantinople*.

The Bassa of Aleppo strangled.

This treacherous and cruel dealing after pardon given, and such a Loyal Rendition of themselves, when as they might have hazarded the whol Empire, raised in the friends of the deceased a thirst of revenge, having yet their Armes in their hands, and the Souldiery as prone to new troubles as they could wish them, and hereupon instantly ensued a nother defection, as great altogether as the former, but the authority of Leaders was wanting to manage it to the effect. Nevertheless upon the first news of it, the Grand Seignior resolved to march himself in person to make a final end, and root out the seeds of those commotions, which were so apt upon every occasion to burst forth.

Prepartion was made accordingly for a solemn exped tion, and the Rebels cursed and dev ted by the Priests to destruction, the *Janizaries* and *Spahees* mustered, and upon their march, the Sultana, the Mother of the Emperour appointed Re ent in his absence, when news came that all was quietted again, and the chief Autho s

thors of the late defection were fled and escaped into *Persia.*

The Emperour being but just in his way, having effected his business, thought it adviseable, while the Army was in a motion into those parts, to treat with the *Persian*, who doubting he might bend his Forces upon him, was willing to come to agreement, and so a peace was confirmed between them, At his return to *Constantinople*, he was welcomed as if he came from a Triumph, but that which pleased him more then the vain glorious pomp of his magnificent Reception, was the news of a Victory obtained by his Forces in *Candia* against the *Venetians*, who having employed the Prince *Almeric de Este*, of the House of *Modena*, as General for that service, who carried with him some Regiments of French, the said Regiments in an expedition into the Countrey, towards *Candea*, with a designe thereupon, were met by the Bassa, and after a Brave Encounter, and much gallantry on both sides, were defeated, very few escaped back again to their Garrisons. The losse and the unagreeableness of the Climate so affected the said Prince, that he shortly after died there (the grave of many a gallant person that have sacrificed their lives against, and for this Infidel) and was brought by Sea back again, to be entered with his Ancestors.

The Earl of Winchel. Ambassador Extraordinary to the Grand Seignior.

At this end of Winter 1660. arrived at the Port, after very bad weather, the right honourable Earl of *Winchelsea* His Majesties Ambassadour

dour extraordinary, in the place of Sir *Thomas Bendiſh*, who ſucceeded Sir *Sackvile Crow* in that imployment in 1648. to the Grand Seignior. He had Audience in very great State, and as uſual, the day thereof, was treated at Dinner in the *Divan*, by the chief Viſier, and He and His Retinue veſted with rich Turky Habits, out of which it is not lawfull to ſee the Emperour, and though the two outermoſt Courts of the *Seralglio*, Conducted into the innermoſt, and thence to a great Hall, leading into his Chamber, the floor whereof was covered with Velvet, embrodered with Pearl, *&c.* the Capitzi Baſſa and his Aſſiſtants, leading him by the Arm to kiſſe his Majeſties ſleeve, as they did ſeveral Gentlemen beſide, that were of his Retinue, but of this an account hath been lately given; but I may not omit that it is certainly reported, the grand Seignior being highly affected with his Majeſties Reſtitution, ſhould ſay, *That if he were to chuſe his God, or his Religion, he would chuſe the King of* Englands.

All things now ſeemed to be in a ſcrene condition, and calm from the late troubles, which had tempeſted this Monarchy: And diſcourſes there were that the Grand Seignior would now at laſt hearken to an accommodation with the ſtate of *Venice*, and conſequently reſtore a free Trade, and commerce to his Dominions, which had been endamaged and ſpoiled by frequent Deprædations.

But as deep waters run ſmooth and ſtiller then ſhallow brooks, ſo was it in this ſeeming

ing

ing tranquility of affaires, not but perhaps there might be due to the Sacred number of 1660. and the particular glories of his Majeſties Reſtitution, and the fortune of *England*, the ſame general peace and quiet, which once bleſt the world in the raign of *Auguſtus Cæſar* (with reverence to that ſacred Miracle) for that the univerſall Ceſſation which *France* boaſts to have given Chriſtianity, by the late accord with *Spain*, was clearly influenced by his Majeſties Native Star, and the neceſſities of Fate, which attended the proſperous Culmination of his greatneſſe, as could be inſtanced and demonſtrated, were it not beyond the purpoſe of this diſcourſe.

Yet ſo much concerns it, that the Grand Seignior took his deliberate Enterpriſe upon Chriſtendome, from the very juncture of this peace; (being as underſtanding and converſant in the affairs of *Europe* as our ſelves) particularly his ancient league with *France*, gave him opportunity of ſuch Intelligence, which he never maintained with the Spaniard, as his neceſſary enemy.

For he knew well, that the ſtate of Chriſtendom could never endure a vacation, nor could be free from the viciſſitudes of intereſt, when ſo many Monarchs at leiſure had opportunity to project their ambition.

Nor was he ignorant of theſe Animoſities which perplexed the late Election of the Emperour at *Frankeford*, nor with what induſtry the French managed their luſt after the Imperial Dignity.

Certain

Certain it was that the Armes of that puiſſant Nation muſt be employed upon another Enemy, whoſe ever ill luck it ſhould be to receive them; and that he knew would be the Houſe of *Auſtria* or ſome other vicine power, if, which was more favourable to his deſign, he did not amuſe all Princes, and then take his beſt advantage.

Theſe undoubtedly were the encouragements of this his Expedition and violent irruption into *Hungary*, he uſing the ſame method of Conqueſt which his Progenitors had fortunately experienced by occaſion of the diviſions and ſecurity of their Neighbours. And therefore unlookt for, or at leaſtwiſe not provided againſt, while the *German* Emperour ſtood upon his wrong-guard, and dreaded the loſſe of *Alſatia* (which jealouſie likewiſe armed the adjacent Princes) he like a deluge entred *Hungary*, and auſpiciouſly began the race of his Glories.

Now the better to conceale his deſignes upon *Europe*, and to colour his aſpect upon thoſe parts, he gave order for a removal of his Court to *Adrianople*, pretending the ſalubrity of the place, and the freer proſecution of his pleaſures, and vacation from buſineſs, and the toyl of the Government, leaving the Sultana his Mother, and the Viſier to the care thereof, as he had done before in his expedition in *Aſia*; Hither accordingly he came attended as uſually, with a great train or Army, but now augmented to an Hoſt, as a guard of his Perſon; ſtill entertaining the Emperors Ambaſſadour, with ſhews and flouriſhes of Peace and

and good correſpondence, till the Viſier having amaſſed and drawn down the *Aſian* Forces over into *Europe*, while the Europeans were embodyed about *Belgrade*; it was plainly manifeſt, what this preparation portended.

Yet the reliques of the late *Tranſilvanian* defection, were ſtill voiced to be the object of this expedition, and to ſettle the other Provinces of *Moldavia* and *Valachia*, in a perfect ſubjection to the grand Seignior, they for ſome late years having fluctuated and wavered in their duty towards him, and ſtill ready upon all occaſion, or change of their Princes, to break out into open hoſtility and diſquiet, and diſturb the Provinces neareſt them, and to take part with any revolt of others, and help and aſſiſt it to a formidable, and very conſiderable puiſſance.

The Turks Policy at his entrance into Hungary.

But in the mean while they approached and entred the *Hungarian* limits without leave, and enlarged their Quarters into the Towns and Villages belonging to the Emperour, contrary to the Tenour of the former, and exiſting League, which appointed the bounds of their Juriſdiction; nevertheleſs complying in all things with the *Hungarians*, and paying their Quarters juſtly, nor taking the leaſt thing from them without ſatisfaction, which was made Capital by the Prime Viſier, who caraſſed the Inhabitants, and treated them very humanely and civilly upon any addreſſe or complaint made to him.

The groſſe of this Army, when made up by the Auxiliary *Tartars*, who are hir'd to wait upon his expeditions, forces marching alſo from all parts (even

(even out of *Dalmatia*, where he resolved to stand onely upon the defensive part, against the attempts of the *Venetians*,) amounted in all to near two hundred and fifty thousand men; disposed of afterwards into several parts and commands, a Resolution being taken to commence the War, which was usher'd with this Letter from the Grand Seigniour to the Emperour.

The Copy of this Letter or Summons coming newly to hand by a person of quality, and having seen the like insolenee, and blasphemous arrogance formerly Printed in the Turkish History, I thought it would be something satisfactory to publish this which expresseth some extraordinary design and resolution of this Victorious and succesful Infidel, as a further instance and Motive to the preceding Exhortation.

WE by the Grace of God, Lord of many Countries, Victor and Triumpher over our Enemies, Potent Emperour of the Turks, Co-adjutor of the God Mahomet, and the Moon, Protector of the Sepulchre of the crucified Christ, Implacable enemy to all professing Christianity: To the Roman Cæsar, *King of few Regions, give to know; That we come to thee with a people of thirty three Kingdoms, so great a multitude as thou never sawest, or heardst*

heardſt of before, to bereave thee by force of Arms, of thy Crown and Tribute of thy Subjects. The City by thy ſelf Inhabited we will beſiege, we will overcome thy ſtrong men, thy women with child we will give to Univerſal ſlaughter, Their Embrio's as Toads we will thruſt through with Spears and ſharpened Stakes; Thy moſt valiant young men we will rend in pieces, and caſt them forth for meat for the dogs. Thee, thy Popes, Cardinals, Arch-biſhops, Monks and Nuns, together with all their own dependings, we will ſend as ſlaves into perpetual bondage, and finally, we will ruine and deſtroy you all: and then ſhall you ſee whether your crucified Chriſt will ſave you from us, who could not ſave himſelf; as if we or ours could give credit, or yield any belief to ſuch incredible things. The very City where he was born, wherein he lies dead, we even in joy detain under our dominions, and aſſuredly you may believe that he will not help you, as being long ſince ſlain.

This we were willing to ſignifie, that thou and thine might know the real Event and Truth thereof, as ſoon as thou couldſt expect. This is given forth by us at our great

Great Metropolis called Constantinople, *which the valour of our Ancestors hath taken from yours, and that which we keep and will alwayes keep, to the Ignominy and disgrace of you all.*

Dated at *Constantinople* in the 15. year of our Reign, and the 23. of our Age.

The *Hungarians* in the mean while had armed themselves under the commands of the two Counts *Serinus* and *Forgatz*, whose Ancestors had been terrible to the Turks, and were famous for their martial exploits and atchievements, but subjected by the Emperours order to his *Generallissimo* Count *Montecuculi*, which at first bred a discontent in the *Hungarians*, who have no affection for the *Germans*, nor would ever chearfully engage with them, except out of envy or emulation; and this is and was one of the chief causes of that little opposition and inconsiderable resistance, that hath been made against this present invasion.

The cause of this misunderstanding hath been very ancient, upon the account of Religion, and much ado there hath been to keep the *Hungarians* in obedience and fealty to the Emperour of *Germany*, as their King and Soveraign, which from being Elective, is now, and hath for many yeares been made Hereditary: that force upon their Priviledge, Rights and Liberty, interwoven with more violent

violent constraints upon their conscience had caused a very great averseness to this Forrain Government, and a general defection in 16.0. and those years: for fuller satisfaction whereof, we must referre the Reader to the Turkish History.

Upon the same score it was that *Bethlehem Gabor* Prince of *Transilvania* entred *Hungary*, some few years after, and possessed himself of the Fortress of *Newhuse alias Newhausel*, the Governour whereof was delivered bound unto him by the Inhabitants, with *Presburg* and other places, and designed (having the Regalia in his hands which were depositted at *Presburg*) to Crown himself, with the consent likewise of the States and the People, he being of the same reformed perswasion: but the Emperours successes in *Bohemia* against the Prince Elector Palatine (with whom *Bethlehem* was in Confederacy) and the King of *Denmark* soon after made him relinquish his design, and secure himself at home, by which meanes the *Hungarians* were forced to submit, but yet so that they alwayes had a hankering and ready proneness to any alteration, and a grudging at, and indisposition to the house of *Austria*, whose Prerogative they have in all their Assemblies highly disputed and debated.

And as a further incentive and reason to this reluctancy, may be added, the general fair and civil usuage in point of Religion and Taxes, which the *Turks* every where observes in those places of the same Kingdom (which are far the better half thereof) that are in and under his subjection and dominion, not intently and prudently considering, *The Aunrians cujed.*

that that forbearance and lenity is meerly a temporary bait and lure to debauch them from their duty to a Christian Prince. For he that will but reflect on the miserable and calamitous condition of the *Greeks* and other Provinces which have been long subdued, and have no dependance and vicinity to Christendom, but are swallowed up in a total Conquest, is sufficiently warned against those insinuating treacherous kindnesses, and popular captations, which will certainly end in most unsufferable slavery and bondage, even to the snatching away their children, and enhausing the Tax of money to the tribute of life, upon their Mahumetanized posterity, carried every year for the Grand Seigniors service to *Constantinople*, and there employed and educated in *Seraglia*.

But to return these misunderstandings betwixt them, and the rumour of the *French* design, either upon *Alsatia*, in *Germany* or *Italy*, to the amusing all the Princes thereof, and causing them to stand upon their own guards, which remov'd the fear of their supply or aiding of the Emperour, put the Turk upon present action, part of which Army advancing upon the Enterprize, were adventurously, and inconsiderately ingaged by Count *Forgats*, who with a party of six or seven thousand *Germans* and *Hungarians* together, was appointed to attend their motion, and observe which way they steered, and to be ready to put relief and succour into what places soever the Infidels should attaque. The Count and his men indeed behaved themseves very gallantly, but their number was far inferiour to the multitudes that pressed upon him

Count Forgatz *unhappy engagement.*

him, whereupon enſued a total rout of his party, moſt of whom are cut in pieces, the reſt hardly eſcaping to the body of the Army, and Count *Forgats* himſelf into *Newhauſel*, being the neareſt the place of his defeat.

The occaſion of his ſo ſudden Engagement, was to diſpoſſeſs the Turk of a Bridge they had laid upon *Danubius*, having put three thouſand men over it to ſecure it, but the pouring in of multitudes upon them occaſioned their diſcomfeiture. *Forgats* was highly queſtioned for this raſhneſſe, becauſe of the ſlain there were 400 Gentlemen, and of the Priſoners 800 had their heads cut off, in the preſence of the Emperors Ambaſſador, which were afterwards ſent to *Conſtantinople*, as an evidence of their Victory.

Upon the news hereof, General *Montecuculi* ſuſpecting the ſiege of the aforeſaid *Newhauſel*, had clapt in a ſupply of a thouſand *Germans*, with proviſion and Ammunition proportionable. This Town is of a late ſtanding, as its name imports, being built for a Frontier, upon a convenient level in a moraſs, the River *Nintre* gliding within a ſtone caſt of the wall, and within eight miles of the River *Wargh*: It is a modern and very regular fortification, conſiſting of ſix great Baſtions or Bulworks, with Flankers, well ſtored with Cannon: the Town having but two Gates, the upper and the lower: There is in it a very large Market place, wherein is a place built at one corner to lodge the Garriſon Souldiers and their Arms, being moſt of them *Germans*, who conſide not in the *Hungarians*; but upon this neceſſity they were mixed together.

The Turk beſieged Newhauſel

The Turk coming before the Town, paſſed his Army over the *Nitre*, by a bridge laid thereupon, a little below the lower gate, (where the River is neareſt the Town) out of reach of the Canon, and entrenched upon the beginning of *Auguſt* this year, and begirt it round, and made his approaches, by thundering day and night from two great Batteries on which were mounted a hundred Cannon, ſo that the ſhots he made were numberleſs. By which fury he battered almoſt all the Houſes and Churches of the Town down into Rubbiſh, but made no conſiderable breach, which he might attempt. Notwithſtanding, the Prime Viſier, being reſolved to carry the Town, one way or other, concluded on an Aſſault, *Septemb.* 14. before break of day, and brought Scaling-ladders, Faggots, and other neceſſaries to fill up the Trenches, but was ſo gallantly and ſtoutly received by the Defedants, that he was forced to ſound a Retreat, having loſt 8000 men at a Breakfaſt, and the Trenches filled with Carkaſſes of the ſlain. They began their fierce onſlaught with the chearful noiſe of *Alla, Alla*, but ended it very ſilently and heavily; Notwithſtanding, the Viſier continued his Reſolution of gaining the place, or periſhing before it; having promiſed the Grand Seignior to Conquer and take four principal places on forfeiture of his Head; but before I proceed further, it will be requiſite to give you a Copy of the Summons to the Governour of this Place.

The Turk beaten off again.

I *That through the Grace of God, and through the Miracles of our Prophet, who is a Son of both Worlds, and by whom there is happineſs and glory, I that am the firſt of the Council, and General of the moſt mighty Emperour of the Turks, that is the King of all Kings upon Earth: To you* Adam Forgats, *that are the Chief among the Nobility of* Hungary, *do make known, that through the Command of my Gracious Lord, I am come with his Forces before* Newhauſel, *to reduce it to his obedience; wherefore if you ſhall deliver up the Place to us, you ſhall have liberty to march out with what belongs to you from the Higheſt to the Loweſt, and to what place you pleaſe, and he that will rather ſtay, ſhall keep his Goods and Eſtate; but if you will not yield, we will take it by force, and every man of ye from the Higheſt to the Loweſt ſhall be put to the Sword. If the* Hungarians *did but know the good Intentions of the Mighty Emperour, they and their Children would bleſſe God for them.* Peace be to the Obedient.

In the Interim, to revenge himſelf of the affront, he received before the Town, he divided his Army into three parts, one part whereof was ordered to march into *Moravia*, and *Auſtria*, and front the Emperours Forces, and the other into *Sileſia*, while he continued the Seige, which ſaid Armies paſſing over the River *Waegh*, made moſt terrible Havock, ſpoyling and burning thirty miles together. They paſſed the ſaid River the 21. of *Auguſt*, but were forced back again with loſſe, yet the day following they came on with 30000. and after ſome oppoſition gained the paſs of the River, 200. Dragoons being ſlain in defence of the paſſage, and put the Imperial forces to a retreat towards *Presburg* After thoſe came a body of 20000. *Tartars*, who took in ſeveral walled Towns, which they burnt to aſhes, with all the adjacent Villages, poſſeſſing themſelves of the narrow paſſages between the Hills, and maſſacring many thouſands of people, putting others in chains, and in fine overbearing all his way without reſiſtance; At the ſame time the paſs of *Jalunca* was attempted, the only entrance into *Sileſia*, but they were forced to retreat, *re infecta*.

The Tartars make an eruption into Moravia.

Lamentable was now the condition of thoſe poor Chriſtians, who were expoſed to thoſe outrages, and could not prevent the ſuddenneſs of the danger, there being no Armies nor places at hand, wherein, or to which they might have recourſe for ſafety. The *Auſtrians* only by the benefit of the Garriſons had opportunity to ſecure, and to put themſelves into a poſture of defence by raiſing every fifth man to beare Armes againſt

gainſt this furious and deſolating Enemy.

But to requite the incurſion of theſe barbarous *Tartars*, the Counts of *Serini* and *Budiani* carried the like ravagement and ruine into the Turkiſh Provinces, where they ſpared nothing they could deſtroy, and left as little of what they could carry away with them, and ſo revenged in part, having alſo defeated and ſlain a party of 3000. Turks, and taken a convoy of 300000. *Rix Dollers*, and other proviſions deſigned for the Leagure of *Newhauſel*, with good ſpeed returned to the *German* General; having notice that the other body of *Tartars* was advancing to joyn with the *Wallachians*, and *Moldavians*, and that they were already come as far as *Clauſenburg*, and to the gates of *Zachmar*, where the *Huſſars* on the 29. of *Auguſt* had ſallied out and killed divers of them;) preventing alſo thereby the danger of being intercepted by forces from *Newhauſel*. *Count. Serini into the Turks Country.*

The Emperour of *Germany* himſelf at the terror of this inroad, left his City of *Vienna* (now filled with the Country people, who flockt thither for refuge, and made ſad Relations of their ruins) to *Lintz* another City in *Auſtria*, and thence by his Agents and Expreſſes gave notice to the Princes of the Empire of the preſent danger, deſiring them to afford him ſome ſudden ſupplies, as he did the ſame to the King of *Poland*, and the States of *Venice* (now reſpited and breathing after a tedious continuance of War, which was devolved upon other Territories) but nothing of ſudden reſolution was to be expected from either of theſe States, and the reſt were too remote and at preſent unconcerned

It

It was rumoured indeed that the *Muſcovite* had proffered his aſſiſtance, in caſe of an accord to be made beawixt him and the *Polander*, but there were never any effects therof, & 'twas the like report that the Duke of *Brandenburgh* would accept of the ſupream command of the United Armies of the Empire, and that *France* offered their aid likewiſe upon certain conditions and Articles, but none of all theſe overtures produced any ſuch thing, by reaſon of the Jealouſies yet reigning between them; though Chriſtendome was never in ſuch jeopardy; and in the meane while for ſatisfaction of the *Hungarians*, and to keep them in their fidelity, which this ſtorm had ſhaken, Count *Serini* was declared the Emperours Generaliſſimo of them.

This ruinous devaſtation can hardly be repreſented by any pen, or pencil, but from its neareſt reſemblance of Doomſday; the fire flaming for twenty miles in view, and laying the Countrey in a heap of aſhes, and the *Tartars* like ſo many devils haling and dragging their Captives, and chaining them together, with ſuch cries and ejaculations, as if Humanity were damned and Nature had expired, amidſt a numberleſſe invention of tortures.

This ſame mercileſs Crew having deſtroyed all things, returned with celerity to *Weiſſemberg*, there to diſpoſe of their prey, and to be ready to aſſiſt the ſiege of *Newhauſel*, while in their abſence the Counts *Suſa* and *Sporck*, where throwing down Trees, and cutting up Ditches, and making deep Trenches to impede their further advance

vance, for they had not men or arms to oppoſe againſt this Torrent.

And ſo we are returned alſo to the ſiege of *Newhauſel*, where the *Turk* having endeavoured to fill the Trenches, and knowing that the ſeaſon would not ſuffer him to continue his Leagure, attempted another ſtorm, which continued off and on *Auguſt* 28. 29. with very conſiderable loſſe, though he now made a breach, but the Trenches proved too wide and too deep, many men periſhing in them, with little danger to the Defendants. *Another ſtorm.*

On *Septemb.* 9. having caſt great Moles of earth, and other implements into the Graft, he ſtormed again, beginning in the dusk of the evening, and continuing it again till midnight, when he made ſuch a fierce ſcalado (the Baſſa's themſelvs in perſon leading on their own men on peril of their own heads if their men did not valiantly) and was in hopes of carrying the Town, for the buſineſſe was come to handy-blows upon the top of the Rampire, and ſome of the Turkiſh Enſignes were advanced thereupon, which nevertheleſs by the ſpeedy and Gallant ſuccour of the Reſerves, and redoubled courage of the Defendants, were wreſted from the Infidels after their utmoſt endeavours and efforts to have maintained their atchievment, and after the ſlaughter of 500 of the beſieged, and the unrevenged fall of 9 ſome ſay 10000. of their fellows, which they left behinde them; upon which carnage was grounded that rumour of the peſt raging in that Army by reaſon of that noyſom ſtench the dead bodies raiſed in the Camp.

This

This trial of one anothers resolution, and utmost Essay of Force proved the Crisis of eithers Fortune: the *Turks* appay'd and taken off their mettal, had no minde to make another venture, nor the Bassa to command it, for fear left that obstinacy of his honour should hazard that and his life together to the Grand Seignior, nevertheleſſe he thought good to continue the Siege, and his preparations for another assault, and threaten it hourly, hoping he had given the Defendants the like qualm upon their spirits, which with a little hard duty, and new offers and advantages upon a surrender, would work them to a compliance; and this took its desired effect, for the *Hungarians* being no way assured of relife, and certaine of good conditions, and having their estates, dwellings and families concerned, resolv'd not to hazard another storm, but to admit of a Treaty contrary to the opinion and resolution of the *Germans*; which Treaty produced an accord and surrender upon very honourable Articles, the Garrison and inhabitants, if willing, to march out with *Colours flying, Drums beating, Match lighted, and Bullet in their mouth, with Bag and Baggage, and to be convoyed to* Comorra *nine miles off. Those that staid to have Indempnity, Protection, and Liberty of Conscience.*

Newhausel *yielded.* Hereupon there marched out 3500. sound men, and 500. wounded, with four pieces of Cannon, most of them *Germans*, having a Convoy of 10000 Turks, who civilly and fairly conducted them to the aforesaid Garrison, and returned to *Newhausel*, where the Prime Visier had out of a pretended generous

rous ſenſe of the *Hungarians* valour given every an of them thirty Duckets, as a reward thereof: n lieu and value of which ſum, he found there a oo. braſſe pieces of Ordnance, and ammuniti- n proportionable, with 3000. Fats of *Hungarian* Wine, the uſe whereof being prohibited the Turks, s converted into money, and ſupplyed and coun- rvailed his liberal magnificence.

The Army thus freed from this difficult piece f ſervice, the ſame flying parties were command- d to make new inroads into *Auſtria*, *Moravia* nd *Sileſia*, while the Prime Viſier deſigned up- n *Presburgh*, the Capital and regal City of that Kingdom, as aforeſaid, and the Imperial Army ot able to make an Head yet againſt them, con- inued paſſing and repaſſing the *Danow* thereabouts, nd a General Council of war being called, Count *Souri* newly made *Generalliſſimo*, Prince *Gonza- ga*, *Montecuculi*, counts *Rotbal*, and *Palſi* being reſent, it was concluded to retreat before the E- emy, and to put in Count *Strozzi* a famous Soul- ier, with a ſupply, as Governour of the place, whe her the Turk directed his March, but being t liberty, and facing all the circumjacent Garriſons f his attaque, he more imperiouſly ſummoned them all together, the dreadful event whereof, muſt be ritted to a further diſcourſe.

The other two diviſions of the Army entred *Moravia* and *Sileſia*, and gained the ſtrong Paſs nd Key of *Jaluncba*, putting the Imperialiſts to light, with ſome execution, but made not that avock as before, having Commandment from the

the Prime Viſier, to offer al friendly and fair terms in the Grand Seigniors name, if they would ſubmit to his protection, the chief of thoſe Terms were, *Liberty of Conſcience*, and *free Exerciſe of all Religions*, *no Taxes or Tribute to be paid for ſix years*, *and then but five ſhillings upon every Houſe, per annum*; with ſecurity of their Laws, rights, Claim, Titles, and Propriety, by which he is in all probility like to gain ſubmiſſion and obedience from, and to eſtabliſh & fix his footing he hath got already in, thoſe Provinces, which he hath once again invaded. *And thus far of their Hiſtory, now I ſhall ſpeak of their Guſtoms and Manners.*

Newhauſel being reduced, which was ſuppoſed & vainly hoped, would have diſappointed the Turks Progreſs, and ſucceſs for this year, being declined ſo far as the depth of winter, the Grand Viſier undertook ſome farther conqueſt, and with his Army, leaving a ſufficient Garriſon, & other numbers to repair and better fortifie the Fort, by bringing the River *Nistre* round about it, marched towards *Preſburg*, the Capital City or Metropolis of lower *Hungary*, and with his approach gave out rumours of his reſolution to attaque it, relying on his firſt fortune, and thoſe popular inſinuations he had ſpread abroad of his reality, juſtice and tenderneſs to ſuch places as ſhould come in to his Maſters protection, with which thriving artifice he had already gained upon the credulity of moſt of the Peſants and indefenſible places.

The Viſiers deſign on *Presburgh.*

Be-

Beſides the honour of the place, as the repoſitory of the Crown of *Hungary* (which the Hungarians moſt religiouſly reverence, as placing the ſafety and glory of their Nation therein, and which being ſeized, would have intituled the winner and wearer to the Kingdom) the convenience thereof as freeing his way to *Vienna*, on one part; and to *Commorra*, *Raab*, or *Newhauſel* on the other, and contrarily incomodating any attempt upon the Iſland of *Schut*, by its Neighbourly correſpondence and aſſiſtance in caſe of danger, where at preſent the Generall Count *Serini* was enquartered, was a great motive and incitement to an attempt againſt it, but ſuch had been the vigilance and care of Count *Strozzi* a famous and experienced Souldier, in providing and furniſhing the City, wherein the hope of the Kingdom was concerned, and his courage, and all other excellent qualities of a Govenour, ſo known and beleived by this diſcreat Vizier, that contenting himſelfe with the ſubmiſſion of *Modern*, St. *George*, *Poſing* and other places that lay open and expoſed to his power, and the bravery and gallant deſignment of ſo high an enterpriſe, which the unimpeded conduct of the affair, he retreated honorably: and as if he had proceeded ſo far meerly upon a plot and deſign to ſurprize ſome places by his ſudden retun he preſently inveſted *Niutra*, a place neer *Newhauſel*, and as well fortified, and more reſpected, because of its Eccleſiaſticall concernments as being a Biſhops See, and by terrifying menaces and preparations for a ſtorm, ſoon wrought upon the defendants

Contents himſelf with ſubmiſſion of places adjacent.

to a ſurrender, who by the Articles thereof were conveyed to *Presburg*.

Nuntia yielded. The ſpeedy and lucky event of this rendition was effectual to his practices upon other places, ſo upon the ſame ſcore *Tyrnaw* and ſome other Towns thereabouts opened their Gates and ſubmitted to him, upon his common Terms of Religion and Liberty, which ſucceſſe invited him to the Siege of *Schinta*, a very ſtrong and conſiderable Fortreſs, and a Magazine of a great and the beſt quantity of the Emperours Artillery, but by the fidelity and valour of the Governour and his men, was repulſed thence, and glad to abandon the enterprize, for that *October* was more then half ſpent, and the climate did much incommodate his *Aſian* and *African* ſouldiery.

Baſſed at Schinta.

Therefore to provide them of warmer Winter Quarters, to keep them well and in health againſt the Spring, he repaſſed his great Guns with ſome of his Army over his Ship bridge to *Gran* or *Strigonium*, rumouring that when he had diſpoſed of thoſe unuſeful pieces in the depth of winter, he would return himſelf with his Europeans and proſecute the War, but in fine he paſſed over his whole Army, being followed in his rear, in expectation of advantage by General *Serini*, who having parted with General *Montecuculi*, conjoyned in attendance of the *Newhauſel* deſign upon the Iſland of *Schut*) and did at laſt cut off ſome 600. Janizaries, with 200. other *Beſonio's*, or Baggage people, engaged in the defence thereof, which they reſolutely maintained, by barricadoing themſelves among the Wagons, ſo that *Serini's* Huſſars were forced

Retires to Winter quarters.

to alight and follow them a foot into their advantages, and there couragiously slew them; (This was some expiation of that defeat given to Count *Forgatz* very neer the same place) as a fortnight before his brother and he had defeated two great parties, but not with so great success. This happened about the last of *October*, and so those parts of this side the *Danow*, conceived some joyfull hopes of a respit till the comming of the Spring.

But the Vizier by those other after accessions had so strongly fixt himself, by leaving a Garrison of 4000. men in *Newhausel*, & 1500. in *Nitre*, besides a body of 10000. men to be ready to assist them upon all occasions, that the Christians are still kept to their Arms to attend their motion, and Guard themselves. And to increase the danger, *Apaffi* the Prince of *Transylvania*, whom they looked upon as under a constraint of compliance with the Turks, and a secret well-wisher to the Christian cause, discovered himself a declared and profest enemy, being inveagled with an investiture of those places taken this *Campagnia*, and upon the total Conquest, with the Crown of *Hungary*: for as soon as they were rid of the Infidels, he with his half Christians, *Valachians*, *Moldavians*, intermixed with *Tartars*, and his own plundering *Transilvanians*, undertook the Lieutenant-ship of the Winter War, those Nations being better able, as inured to the climate, to undergo the extremities of the weather.

Apaffi intrigues with the Turk discovered.

Apaffi manages the Winter war.

Apaffi's first design was upon the *Berg* Towns, or Mine Hills, whence the Hungarian gold is fraught, which

which as soon as he had parted with the Grand Visier, then retreating to *Belgrade*, he attempted, and this the easier, for that there was no resistance in readiness to oppose him, the forces that were raised by the Counts of *Cochary* and *Tekelly* in the upper *Hungary*, for the most part (for that the lower was already joyned with *Serin*, or awed by the Turks) were a little before, (maugre the enemies design of impeding them) already arrived to the gross of the Army; which also for want of necessaries for Men and Horse, and devoured by the Turks are now dispersed into Quarters.

His design upon the Mine towns

The two first obstacles of his design upon the Mine Towns, and which barred his entrance, were the two Towns of *Levents* and *Novigrad*, reputed one of the prime places of upper *Hungary*; *Levents* was also well appointed, having in it a Castle manned with coragious Souldiers, and firmed with thick walls, flankers and Turrets, that accordingly gave the enemy a rude and unwelcom entertainment, but their numbers being not to be wearied and no relief to be expected by the besieged, it was Yielded by agreement, and the Articles according to the modern policy of the Turks punctually observed.

Leventz. yeelded.

From thence *Apaffi* marched to *Novigrad*, lying further in upper *Hungary*, which after a stout but short resistance, not without suspicion that the Gouernour was of *Apaffi's* party (more obvious now by his retreat into the Enemies Country, & the neutrality or rather assistance of the whole Province, as to the generality, towards *Apaffi*) was rendred likewise and the Garrison dismust, but

Novigrad lately yielded.

not

not into Christian quarters, being set to work and enjoyned to be in readinesse to assist their late besiegers.

The enemy encroaching thus upon the Mine Towns, some Regiments which could be best got together were sent to enforce them, and to hinder them from setling their Winter quarters in those places, which were nevertheless much despaired of, for that *Apaffi* with his aids threatned *Cassovia* the Metropolis of upper *Hungary* with a present siege, as he did in effect beleagure *Filick*, some ten miles distant, prejudgeing that the Christians if once able to take the field, would carry the war into these Quarters, of which therefore they would betimes possesse themselves; and therefore notwithstanding the prevention aforesaid, they soon after seized on *Shomnitz*, *Cremnitz*, and other Towns of the Mines; and by threatning Letters and summons terrified the people thereabouts to an acquiescence and submission under his own command: They faced likewise *Tockay* (the strongest hold of all) with parties; but neither their courage, multitudes, practices or hopes, served them to the adventure of a siege. Seizeth some of the Mine towns.

Nevertheless to countenance such resolutions, they spread rumours abroad as if the *Grand Visier* would presently return, and orders were indeed to that purpose dispatcht to the Magistrates of *Frystad* to make ready two Bridges over the *Waegh*, so broad as that whole Squadrons might passe over there abreast, in order to another inruption into *Moravia*.

This news caused Count *Serini*, who till then

continued in the Iſle of *Schut*, obſerving the deſigns of them at *Newhauſell*, to put himſelf into motion, which preſented him with ſome conſiderable booties, (but inconſiderable parties,) deſigned for *Conſtantinople*; and that was all he was able to do; the Auxiliaries of the Empire, amounting in all not to above 8000 men under command of the Count of *Hohenlo*, (whoſe anceſtors were famous in the low Country war) by their ſurfeits upon the fruits of the Country, which are in great abundance in the Hereditary dominions, being ſo diſeaſed, that they were in no condition or capacity for any field ſervice; to encreaſe theſe Auxiliaries the Swedes were neer upon their arrival from *Bremen*, with 700 horſe well mounted, but now like to have met with ſome danger at *Erford*, as the *Heſſen Darmſtad Ayds* periſhed with a greater misfortune upon the *Danubius* in their paſſage to *Vienna*.

Count *Hohenlo* General of the Auxiliaries.

Neither were the Frontire Gariſons better conditioned by want of many neceſſaries, even *Raab* and *Comorra*, where the Officers that ſurrendred *Newhauſel* had been newly acquitted, ſo that amidſt ſo many exigencies and ſtreights every thing was feared to exceſſe: The Emperor himſelf was at this time departing from *Vienna* to the *Diet* he had ſummoned at *Regenſpurg*, to conſider with the Princes of *Germany* of ſome quick expedient to redreſſe thoſe evils, leaving the Archduke *Charls Joſeph* to govern in his abſence, who to adde affliction to miſery is ſince deceaſed, and the direct line of the Imperial Family, ſave in the Emperour, totally extinguiſhed, a matter of no ſmall moment to ſome

The Emperour to *Regensburgh*, or *Ratisbone*.

deſigns

deſigns in the world, eſpecially ſince the Pope and the French were now ſo neer a rupture, yet to alleviate the preſent diſtreſſe, providence was pleaſed to beſtow on the vigilance and conduct of Count *Serini*, a very remarkeable ſucceſſe. The Forces of *Apoſſi* intermingled with *Tartars* and ſome *Turks*, purſuing their deſign of another invaſion into *Moravia*; having alſo an eye upon the Iſland of *Schut*, had privately laid a bridge over the River *Mur*, and had paſſed two thouſand Horſe already over it; of which *Serini* having good and timely notice by a diſcharge of a Cannon, he roſe from his poſt, and with his troops ſo fiercely charged them, that betwixt ſurpriſed and diſmayed, and fairly worſted, they betook themſelves back to the bridge, where rancountring with numbers of their fellows paſſing over in great haſte to them, they could neither goe forward nor backward, but were forced to take the River, which ſpared none, there eſcaped very few of thoſe 2000. this was done in the morning, *Novemb.* 27. when *Serini* brought two field-pieces and 300. of his Foot to face the Enemy, who ſtood on the other ſide of the water and managed a revengefull Skirmiſh all the day long, and then retreated towards *Caniſia*, from whence they are dreaded to reinforce this their firſt attempt, being exceedingly inraged at this diſgraceful diſappointment.

Count *Serini* gives a great defeat to the *Turks*.

There is mention made in the *Diet*, of Marſ. *Turenne* to ſucceed in the ſupream command in *Hungary*, by means of an invitation, and requeſt to the French King, whoſe aſſiſtance they would thereby

Affairs of the Diet.

thereby have engaged, together with a numerous company of voluntier Gentlemen, who would have accompanied and attended the ſaid Marſhall in the expedition: but ſo many conteſts aroſe afterwards by the rivall competition of the German Princes to that command, that to ſatisfie thoſe intereſts which were of great conducement to the ſervice, they at laſt fixed upon Generals from among themſelves, not devolving the abſolute power to one Generaliſſimo, but to the joynt councels of the ſupream Commanders, which are firſt the Marqueſſe *Leopold* of *Baden* General, Count *Fugger* Major General of the Horſe raiſed by the States of the Empire, Duke *Ulrich* of *Wittenburg* General of Foot, Duke *Guſtave* of *Baden Durlach*, Duke *Adolph* of *Holſtein* and Baron *de Bunches*, Major Generals of Foot, of the Emperours own forces, Count *Mountecuculi* is Lieutenant General, and Count *Spar* Field Marſhall: what the number of men will be that are to be put under this command are not certainly known, but it is ſuppoſed, the whole Force will amount to upwards of above a 100 thouſand men compleatly armed and well diſciplined.

But while theſe things were debating the Emperours affairs were in an ill condition in *Tranſylvania* and upper *Hungary*, by the practiſes of Prince *Apaffi*, upon the diſcontents of ſeverall Garriſons for want of pay, inſomuch that *Zekelheyt* and *Clauſenburg* revolted and put the Towns into the hands of the ſaid Prince, who plays the Turks game more openly then hither-to he had done; with theſe Towns the circumjacent

gent County ſubmitted likewiſe. *Zackmar* a ſtrong place began to warp the ſame way, but the Emperour and the Councel of *Vienna* having had ſo late experience of the miſchief of mutinies for pay had provided a ſum of money which came in ſeaſon to keep them in their duty. Withall Forces under Grneral *Souches* were ordered that way to confirm the places that ſtood, but it is perceived that money is the beſt expedient to retain them in ſo many difficulties of the Empire, and the diſaffection of the Countrey, who have an itching ear after *Apaffi's* propoſals, and were never much in love with the Auſtrian Family, becauſe of their reſtraint upon the reformed Religion; and with thoſe pretences *Apaffi* gains mightily upon them; ſo that without they be ſuddenly awed by ſome advantage on the Emperours ſide they will undoubtedly accept of him for their Prince and Governour; and this is the condition of thoſe parts, by many ſuppoſed like to be the ſeat of the war this Summer.

Chap.

CHAP. XIV.

The late Expedition of Generall SERINI *into the Turks Country.*

Hth erto had the Christian Army been only defensive, to repell the force and injury offered by the Barbarians in their causeleſſe and ungrounded Invasion of the Emperours Dominions, when Winter ſummoning their Asian and Southern people to warmer quarters, gave the noble *Serini* (who had ſcarce breathed between action and deſigne, ſuch was his extraordinary vigilence over this enemy) a little reſpit and pauſe to conſider in what way to requite this their violence by returning it in the ſame meaſure upon their Dominions.

And it pleaſed providence ſo to favour and to ominate his enterpriſe, that the mildneſſe and clemency of the weather which had thawed the conjunction of the Turks and Tartars (who waited for Froſt and Ice to give them paſſage into the next Province,) and diſſipated them into remote quarters for proviſion and ſubſiſtence, about which they fell to blows, ſoon after turned it into ſeaſonable cold weather, and gave advantage to the Hungarian Army, enforced with the ſupplies under Count *Hohenlo*, to begin the Expedition which was about the beginning of *Ianuary*, new ſtile,

The whole Army conſiſted of thirty thouſand men

men well reſolved, under the conduct of this noble Chieftain, who had given ſuch eminent proofs of his Military ſufficiencies, and was ſolely capacitated to the preſent undertaking, as a perſon acquainted with the places deſigned upon, by reaſon of his extract thence, and the ancient original of his Family, endowed once there with great poſſeſſions, but ſwallowed, and now eaten up by Turkiſh Timars or Souldier-Farms, for which the ſeveral proprietors are bound to be ready with ſo many Horſe & Arms for the ſervice of the grand Seignior.

The main bottom of the deſign was if poſſible to hinder and ſtop thoſe waies of advance by which the Turkiſh power was like to be powred next Spring upon *Hungary*, threatned with a plenary Conqueſt and reduction of it unto the *Ottoman* Scepter; and to that purpoſe to waſte and deſtroy all thoſe places by which their Army muſt neceſſarily paſſe in purſuance of thoſe projections; or at leaſt incommodate and retard their march, while that the Emperour with his ayds might be in a readineſſe to receive them: In order hereunto Count *Serini* with all ſecrecy departed from his rendezvouz neer *Raab*, where he ſtayd awhile to amuſe the Turks (who had had a deſign upon the Iſland of *Sebul* aſſiſted by ſome Tartars (to whom *Serini* will allow no quarter by reaſon of their unmerciful uſage of the Country) but were diſappointed by the weather, and thence ſet forward with as much ſpeed as the drawing of his great guns would allow him.

In this equipage and reſolution he proceeded

in

in a week and some few dayes march as far as the confluence of the *Danubius* and the *Drarus*, a little below which lies the bridge of *Esseck*, the only usual and strongest bridge on which the Turks passe their Forces, Wagons and Carriages, into the lower *Hungary* from *Belgrade*, and other places of their Rendevouz; and immediately fell to work to break down the said bridge, or at least demolish it so far that it should be rendred altogether unpassable and unserviceable to the enemy for this Summer. But the Turks of the other side being a considerable Garrison, as the importance of the place required, seeing his intentions endeavoured all they could by continuall shooting to enterrupt his work; but his great guns so annoyed and terrified them, and helped forward the destruction of the siege attempted by fire and all other waies of Mine, that in a nights time a great part thereof was quite broken and fallen into the River, the Turks being forced to desert the station and the defence thereof, for which it is reported that many of the Officers are now under question, and will be severely punished by the grand Seignior, who is highly enraged and vexed at the businesse.

There being no more to be done to the bridge, the Count spent the next of his fury upon the Country, which he layd in ashes round about, there being no lesse then 1000 Villages which are reported to have been burnt by him, and herein he did not onely satisfie his particular revenge, many of the places formerly belonging to his Ancestors, and detained by the Turks,

Turks, but left theenemy nothing to ſubſiſt on either for man or horſe, if he ſhould come that way. They that have ſeen this deſolation, ſay that it is a moſt ruful ſpectacle, not a ſtick or ſtraw remaining, or to be ſeen for many miles together. *Few* priſoners came to his hands, for the Landlords ſuſpecting what would happen, had timely removed themſelves upon news of of his approach: and as for their Boors, they are not deemed, or to be taken as priſoners of war, on either ſide.

With the terrour of theſe exploits being now upon his return, for that a report was very rife, that the enemy had joyned, & made haſte after him, he came before *Quinque Eccleſiæ*, or 5. *Kercken*, and ſummoned the Town, menacing all extemity if they delayed a ſurrender or engaged this Army in a ſiege or aſſault, & the cunning Garriſon ſo diſſembled a fearful complyance, that part of his Forces thinking the town their own, drew within reach of their Canon, which was very plentifully diſcharged among them, and a number of Officers of note, and the forwardeſt ſouldiers ſlayn therewith: which ſo provoked the General, that he commanded a preſent aſſault to be given, and the Town to be ſtormed on every ſide, which after a ſhort but ſtout reſiſtance was entred, and immediately plundered, and then fired, and ſacked: no quarter being given. The mean while, thoſe that had time to fly made to the Caſtle, where they were received, and which ſtood ſtill out, knowing that *Serini* could not dwel upon a ſiege, as in truth his men being ſo harraſſed and tired out, it had

been very imprudentiall for him to have done.

But leaving them; thus bent upon an obſtinate defence, and having gained glory enough by the ſacking of the Town, he paſſed by *Zigeth* (famous for his Noble grandfather) and with the ſame fury ſet upon a town called *Segeſs* not far diſtant from thence, which he carried likewiſe by aſſault, and put the Garriſon to the ſword, leaving therein a Garriſon of his own, which wil be in danger to be loſt; as lying betwixt *Canyſa* (a ſtrong Fortreſſe of the Enemies) *Alla Regalis* and *Zigeth*, if the Count come not to its relief, as he is engaged to do upon another account, for that he left his great Artillery likewiſe thereabout which his occaſions muſt oblige him to fetch home, or he intended another expedition back again upon a further proſecution.

Having thus accompliſhed his deſign he returned about the end of *February*, when moſt men that boded his deſigne, and feared he had been engaged too far beyond any poſſibility of retreat, could not but admire the excellence and Felicity of his Conduct, attended with ſo many great ſucceſſes; but what ever his glory is, which is his own, it is no way proportionable to that terrour which he hath caſt upon the Turk, who dread his name as they did that of *Huniades* and *Scanderbeg*; and it is not to be doubted, but by the bleſſing of God upon his life, he may prove ſuch another ſcourge to that inſolent People.

Chap.

CHAP. XV.

The Intereſt of all the Princes in Chriſtendom upon the accompt of Policy and Religion in a War with the Turk.

I. INtereſt, ſaith the Duke of *Rohan*, governes Princes more then the Princes govern the People, which according as it is well or ill underſtood, cloſely or negligently followed, is either the ſtrength or ruine of States and Kingdoms, being nothing elſe but the advantage that a Kingdome may make, or diſadvantages it may ſuffer from the preſent ſtate of affairs in the world: to diſcern therefore the publick intereſts at this time, Lay we this for our foundation, that there are two Powers in the whole world, which are as the two Poles from whence deſcend the Influences of Peace or War, of happineſs or miſery upon the ſeveral parts of it, *viz.* that of the Chriſtian, and that of the Turk; that of the infidel finding it ſelf improved to a miracle, hath not been able to conceal the deſign it hath of an univerſal Monarchy: that of the Chriſtian being naturally obliged to make a counterpoiſe of all the ſubordinate powers, whether Pagan, Jewiſh or Chriſtian, being annexed to the one or the other, according to their particular Intereſts.

II. It

II. It follows unavoidably that the Chriſtian Princes are very much concerned to lay aſide that meanneſſe of deſigns, and enterpriſes, wherewith this laſt century they have undervalued themſelves; the petty *acquiſt* of a little ſpot to former purchaſe rather then a Princes conqueſt: The inglorious wars with their own ſubjects, where they loſe whoever conquereth, the endleſs wranglings about a *Portugal*, a *Flanders*, a *Parma*, like thoſe of the Heathens for a poor ambition, and a very narrow Intereſt, and reſolve once more nobly for the Chriſtian faith, not for a little Province, but for 18 parts of 24. of the world ſwallowed up of Infidelity.

III. For our ſins multiplying, and our hereſies making up their full meaſure, when we would not live under the eaſie yoke of Chriſt: we were brought under the intollerable tyranny of the Infidel *Choſwey* and *Hunmer*, who overthrew our Religion, and propagated Mahumetaniſme by the juſtice of God, and through the ſpreading nature of evil by permitting carnal liberty (a bait that will catch all fleſh) by promiſing a ſenſual Paradiſe which is more taking with mens experiences than a ſpiritual one is with their hopes, and by the power of the Sword which effectually teacheth the conquered the Religion of the Conquerours hath improved it ſelf to that fearful latitude & extent as threateneth to out Chriſtianity from the earth, the Turks ſucceeding the *Saracens*, and adding to their Dominions *Turcomania*, *Perſia*, *Egypt*, *Syria*, *Greece*, and ſeveral parts of Europe, as it is at this day. In relation unto this dreadful power the Intereſt of Princes

Princes is either common to them all, or elſe peculiar to ſome: that which is common to all beſides the preſent invaſion and terrour; Is

IV. Religion the common happineſs, and common care of Chriſtians.

1. This is that which ties us to the moſt high God in duties, and the moſt high God to us in mercies; that bleſſeth all we ſet our hands unto, that is our honour in the ſight of the Nations; that is the great improvement of our Natures; the great reſtauration of mankind; the inward Counſels of God, the Charter of eternity written in the blood of Chriſt, copied down to us in the blood of Martyrs, our fore-fathers, who expect that we ſhould tranſmit them down to poſterity: this religion, for whoſe defence you are ſet, by whoſe God you reign, by whoſe precepts and ſanctions your Thrones are ſecured, intreats your ſuccours, prays your aſſiſtance in her diſtreſſe, and hopes you will not deny her prayers, as you would not have the prayers ſhe taught you denyed in a time of need. It is your honour to help God againſt the mighty, that invade his Kingdom, as it will be your happineſs to be helped by him againſt the mighty that invades yours: he can prevail without you, your greatneſſe extendeth not unto him; you cannot ſubſiſt without him; would you have your thrones eſtabliſhed in righteouſneſs; your people tied unto you in conſcience: your Kingdomes civilized and pacified: your borders, in peace and plenty: your ſubjects ingenuous and free: your times knowing and happy, and your names as laſting as letters, in time ſtir up your ſtrength: quit your ſelves

like

like men, maintain Religion and it will maintain you: or would you ſee cruel tyrannies, bathed in the blood of Kings at every ſucceſſion: Thrones environed with heaps of vaſſals and ſlaves; no Nobles in the Court, nor Gentlemen in the Countrey: no free men in the Land: no natural affections to wives or children: no inheritance to poſterity: no memory of Anceſtors: no Morality, or Learning: no Arts or Sciences: would you be the reproach of mankind and humane ſociety? and ſee neither peace to him that goeth out, nor to him that cometh in? but the whole earth covered with violence, oppreſſion, rapine, uncleanneſſe and blood: with ſuch enormities as the ears that heareth them would tingle at: or would you live under the promiſes of this life and that which is to come, where grace and glory is diſpenſed, and no good thing withheld from them that fear God: where you ſhall be bleſſed in the City, and in the field, in the fruit of your body, and in the fruit of the ground; in your buſhel and your ſtore, when you come in, and when you go out: where the Lord ſhall command the bleſſings upon you, and whatſoever you ſet your hands unto.

V. But more particularly is Religion become the Intereſt of every Kingdom: 1. Of *Spaine*, whoſe zeal for the Catholique Religion is the beſt prop of that Monarchy: its that which obligeth the Pope and Papiſts in all Kingdoms to promote his greatneſs againſt the Proteſtants and the Princes of *Italy*, to ſerve his deſign againſt *France*. 2. Of the Pope and the Princes that

that hold of him in *Italy* in the right of the Church whose patrimony lieth in the same bottom with their Religion, and whose estates are entailed upon them by the holding of their Christianity. 3. Of *France* whose power is impowred by indulging Protestants, and assisting them against the encroachments of *Spaine*. 4. Of the *Low-countries*, the *Hans-towns* of *Germany*, and the Princes, with *Denmark* and *Swethland*, whose religion hath propagated the liberty of the four first of these, and upheld the Kingdoms of the two last: all which had been swallowed up of the *Austrian* power, had not their Religion knit their interest together, and they who were otherwise at a great distance in situation and civil concernes become so united in their faith: in a word, the Lawes, the priviledges, the constitutions and policies of *Europe* are so enterwoven with Christian religion, that if it be pulled down the government of *Europe* falleth down with it.

VI: But Religion is not all, though it be enough to engage the states and lives of all that professe it, for the Christians have many more engagements upon them.

1. Namely, the *Emperour* hath his borders to secure, and his rebellious people, who have taken sanctuary under the Turk to subdue every yeare, untill this ill neighbour be removed: as hath *Poland*, *Sweden*, and *Muscovy*.

2. The *English* and the *Dutch* have the *Levant* and other places to be setled, which cannot be expected as long as this absolute Tyrant gives Lawes to sea and land.

3. The

3. The *French*, the *Spaniards*, and other Popiſh Princes have the yoake the Pope hath ſet upon their necks (to enſlave them to him more unworthily then they do the people to themſelves) to remove, which they could never yet attempt, but their Ghoſtly father chaſtized them with an Invaſion of *Turks* or *Moors*, or deluded them into an holy warre, where he had his privy projects beyond the publique deſigne, that (as the Sea loſeth in one place it gaineth in another) the Emperour and the other Princes loſt more to his Holineſſe in the Weſt, then they were like to gain of the *Turk* in the Eaſt.

Lord *Bacons* advertiſment touching an holy War.

4. Beſides, there is no ſuch undertaking at this day, for earthly honour, with ſecular advantage and greatneſs, as a war upon Infidels: No fancy this! the *Spaniards* invaded *Mexico*, *Peru* and other parts of the Weſt Indies: and what floods of treaſure have flowed into *Europe* upon that action: ſo that the Rates of Chriſtendom are improved fifteen times more then formerly by a growing treaſure of Gold and Silver; beſides the acceſſe of Empire and new Territories: not to mention the rich Trade of Spices, Stones, Muſk, and Drugges opened by our honourable atchievements in *Affrica*, *Aſia*, and other parts of the world, would it be nothing to make all the kingdoms of the earth become kingdoms of Chriſt, and yours under him? And the Sunne would never ſet in the Chriſtian Kingdomt, but ever ſhine upon one part or other of them, as the Sun of Righteouſneſſe ever ſhines upon the whole.

5. How many thouſand perſons might be employed

employed in a War against the Infidels who do worse at home? forreign warres are the breathing of a Kingdoms veine, to let out its ill blood: the idleness of Christendom might rescue its very sin, and shame might cure it.

6. The idle being dispatched to engage the Infidel abroad, the *divided* would in expectation of the event of that engagement be *united* at home. A warre with the *Turk* is the grand means of the peace of Christendome. The war with *Carthage* was the peace of *Rome*:

7. Besides *Palestine* was a parcell of the Roman Empire. *Cyprus* a piece of *England*, some parts of *Ægypt* belong to *France*: not to speake of the Churches right, it is not fit for Christian Princes to let goe what is their own to an Infidel, and fight among themselves for what is not their own; and doth not pitty and compassion move you to consider the distressed Christians in *Syria*: were it not worth the time, if you neglect your own to maintain Gods title to the holy Land, to make *Jerusalem* once again the joy of the whole earth: to restore the chappel of Christs conception at *Nazareth*, his birth at *Bethlem*, his burial on Mount *Calvary*, ascention on Mount *Olivet* to their primitive piety and devotion: what pleasure were it but to see those Theaters of Mysteries, of Wonders and Miracles. It were pity but the blasphemies of the Turks against Christ, and their cruelty against Christians were punished, and a way opened by the Sword for Instruction and Catechizing, and such other successfull motives to Christianity, in order to that universall pro-

ſeſſion of Religion which is to bleſſe the world with happy times the laſt thouſand years of duration.

8 Though umbrages and fond jelouſies, the fume of love, and weak fancies are not competent foundations to build a warre upon: yet to prevent a miſchief whereof we have but too juſt a fear is the reſult of right reaſon, and the conſtant practice of all wiſe men and Nations, (its folly like a clown to ward a blow onely when it is paſt, to play an aſtergame is rather a ſhift then a policy, eſpecially conſidering that warre is a Tragedy that ever deſtroyes the Stage whereon it is acted) now that the Turks are now juſtly to be feared, cannot be denied, *Aſia* is over-run, *Greece* is ſubdued, *Tranſilvania* is made tributary, the Hereditary countries of *Auſtria* are made deſolate,: *Hungary* is revolted, ſome Iſlands in the *Mediteranian* ſea are loſt, there is but the *Alps* between them and *France*, and *Italy*, but a River between them and *Poland*, but the *Pyrenean* mountains between them and *Spaine*: they give Law to the Midland ſea. Let us make therefore the warre with the Turk, the ſewer of Chriſtendome, and drive all diſcords out of it: *Europe* now is ſurfeited with people, and many of them active ſpirits, and ſtirring natures, employing themſelves in mutual jars and diſſentions: which this warre will cloſe up, uniting all the malice and power of *Europe* againſt the common foe of Chriſtianity.

Object. But is it Lawful to make a War for Religion, to inforce that which ſhould be perſwaded

ſwaded, to make our Chriſtian Saviour an Heathen Idol, in ſacrificing the blood of men to him, and whilſt we would let the world ſee we are Chriſtians, to forget the reſt of the world are men?

Anſw. We allow not War to plant Religion, though we allow Religion to make advantages, of war for its Plantation, beaſts may till the ground, though men ſow the ſeed. But we ſay (there being ſome as the Philoſopher ſaid, *Naturâ Domini*, and ſome *Naturâ Servi*; ſome born to Command, and ſome born to Obey) That where there is an heap of Inhabitants (calling themſelves a Kingdom or State) that is altogether unable or unworthy to Govern, there it is a juſt cauſe for another Nation, that is Civil, to ſubdue them, in order to a better Government amongſt them. And where the conſtitution of a State, & the Fundamental Cuſtoms of it are againſt the Laws of Nature and Nations, there a War may be lawful to remove thoſe Cuſtoms and Conſtitutions (the light of Reaſon being that part of the Image of God upon which Government is founded.) They that live in a way contrary to that Reaſon, are immediately uncapable of Government: And any Nation, ambitious of an enterpriſe of true glory and merit (as the *Romans* who Marched for the freedom of *Greece*) might diveſt them of their Government. Now the Turks are confeſſedly a rout and ſhole of people, ſo ignorant, and ſo barbarous that they are uncapable of government, their conſtitutions are ſo unnaturall as, that of ſlaves governing freemen: that of mur- Lo. *Bacon.*

der in caſe of expeding that of commonneſſe of women: that of prohibiting Learning, &c. that mankind by a league of nature, and the tacit conſideration of humanity, ſhould riſe againſt them as the reproaches of humane monſters of mankind, and the very ſhame of nature: A war being thus commenced by an inſtinct of nature, to reduce beaſts to men, may be improved by the principles of reaſon to perſwade thoſe men to be Chriſtians.

*Ch.*2. The intereſt of the Chriſtian Princes among themſelves, all reconcileable with a common intereſt againſt the Turke. But becauſe one ſaid, that *except you bray Chriſtendome in a Morter, and mold it into a new paſt, there is no poſſibility of an holy warre*; and was of opinion *that the Philoſophers ſtone and an Holy warre were but the Rendezvouz of crackbraines that wore their Feathers in their heads inſtead of their hats*: and all this in reference we ſuppoſe to the divided intereſts of Chriſtendom. Before therefore we unite the European Princes in a common intereſt againſt the Infidels, we will conſider their peculiar intereſts among themſelves: and begin we where we are with that of *England*.

L. Bacon.

1. *England*, being a little world within it ſelf, was not much concerned with forreign States any further then by way of commerce and trade, untill the practices of *Spain* and *France* meeting with its own diſtempers made it more obnoxious then formerly, and ſo branched its intereſt to theſe maxims following:

Englands intereſt.

1. To maintain a conſtant warre, not onely to

to diſcharge ill humore, which would otherwiſe feed upon themſelves: But firſt, to ballance *Europe*. 2. To train ſouldiers in the field, eſpecially to exerciſe ſea-men, who are the beſt wall of this Kingdome, 3. To enrich the noble undertakers with Repriſals: or, 4. to relieve and ayd a decaying Prince or State. 5. To maintain the ſoveraignty of the Narrow ſeas. 6. To take the thoughts and diſcourſes of the people off from more diſtaſtefull affairs at home, where all men are never pleaſed. 7. To keep up that reputation abroad which we have gained; a main intereſt in any Eſtate.

2. An inviolated *unity* ſecured by Indulgence, reſolution, the one a ſatisfaction to them who are under the evil of former miſcarriage, and to ſecure themſelves may fall into more: the other a terrour to them who preſuming upon that Indulgence attempt further Innovations, a hard and a ſoft breaks a flint, an hard & a ſoft breaks a people.

3. No toleration contrary to the eſtabliſhed Laws, to keep up a perpetual faction. The Duke of *Rhoan* reciteth this as a fundamental maxim of Qu. *Eliz.* viz. to baniſh from *England* the exerciſe of the Roman Religion, as the only means to break all the plots of the *Spaniards*, who under this pretext did there foment rebellion: deeming, ſaith that Noble perſon, as it is moſt true, that *England* is a mighty animal, that can never die, except it kill it ſelf.

4. To be the head of the Proteſtant Religion: to which purpoſe there ſhould be ſtrict alliances, conſtant and exact intelligence *mutuall*, and a partnerſhip

partnerſhip *in* all the treaties of Proteſtant Princes, eſpecially with the *Low countries*, who open to us the way to *France* and *Spaine*: alwaies provided that they encroach not either upon our trade or fiſhing; in the laſt whereof we looſe 452000 l. yearly to that people, which may be prevented by Lawes and Conſtitutions in that behalfe provided, and engroſſed in the treaty. However the *Netherlands* may be divided, its the peculiar intereſt of *England* to promote the Proteſtant Religion, with the ſame meaſure of zeal the King of *Spaine* promotes the Catholique.

5. National proviſions againſt ſloth and luxury, two inſenſible crudities that melt away the Engliſh glory. It was neither *Roman*, *Saxon*, *Dane* nor *Norman* that overcome this Nation, but the intemperance of them all: all Empires have riſen to their greatneſſe by ſobriety and frugality, the mothers of prudence nd reſolution: ſo by luxury and intemperance (whoſe daughters are ſoftneſſe, and unmanlineſſe) they have all declined, and come to nothing.

6. A well diſciplined Militia: the Kings of *England* were alwaies drawn with their ſwords by their ſides. All Iſlands muſt be well armed for ſecurity at home and commerce abroad.

7. Very good intelligence. An hundred eyes and eares was part of the Kings character: they muſt have this particular from him whom they repreſent, as our Law ſaith, that they have their center every where, and their circumferenee no where: and this either by keeping in pay ſome confidents, or maintaining ſome picklocks:

or

or breeding up ſome youth in forreigne parts, at our own, or our Embaſſadours charge: and having a watchfull eye over Councellors, Embaſſadours, and priviledged perſons retinues in *England*.

8. To keep a check mate for *France* in *Flanders* or that way, *France* being now as likely to be univerſal Monarch, as *Spaine* was, if they cannot finde a ſalique Law in *Spain* as well as *France*; and more dangerous to us by reaſon of our neighbourhood to it, in ſcituation and diſtance from its intereſt and inclination. But the French deſignes are open.

There Intereſt is: 1. To counterpoiſe the Empire and *Spaine*: and therefore the firſt Card ſhe playes is the embroyling of the Empire: which is too great to be attempted untill it be firſt divided. *France.*

2. To diſturb the Pope who is alwaies by his place, and now by Nation an intire friend to his dear houſe of *Auſtria*. It was the ſaying of one Pope at his death to thoſe that wept about him, *Do not weep for me as long as the Catholique King of* Spain *is alive*. And particularly *France* muſt much look to her right to enveſt Churchmen.

3. To promote the warre with *Portugal*, and engage the moſt Noble Commanders in that ſervice, eſpecially *Don John* of *Auſtria*.

4. A moderation in point of Religion in oppoſition to the zeal and ſeverity of *Spaine* that may draw the Proteſtant Eſtates & Kingdoms to this ſide of the ballance, together with a readineſſe to aſſiſt them againſt the Invaders of their Eſtates

Estates and Liberties that may retain them here.

5. Spies and Pensioners in all the Courts of *Europe*, especially they that are within the reach of *Austria*, to have before he clearly what passeth among her neighbours, and that as occa-
D. *Rhoan.* sion serves she strengthen the weak, assure the fearful, and stop the engagement of those that fall off, and by all means to eroſſe the intelligence of *Spaine*.

6. To be ready with Men, Munition and Armes: an Army and a treasure in *France* may do wonders in two respects, to buy or keep off the English footing in *Flanders*: to buy or force an interest in *Italy*, and to fit her for an elective Kingdom moreover: a Law against expences is a fundamental of *France* and *England*.

7. To meet *Spaine* in all treaties, especially in *Germany* and *Italy*, with such slow and provident persons as may keep peace with what hath overcome Christendome by delayes and reaches of many years foresight: who are to have a particular eye upon the succession: and in the declining age of the King of *Spaine* to shuffle in some pensions to his very Councel table, looking backward strictly upon the Princes of the blood in *France*, among whom the King is to appear most active and careful of places of trust, which he knows not how soon he may leave to confidents while he is in pursuits of further interest.

8. A firm league with the *Switz* for their land service, and the *Hollanders* for their service at sea, especially in the *Indies* against the *Spaniards*

dear

dear wife there. To all which adde a reputation and ſecreſie the many deſigns of *France* upon *Poland*, *Italy*, *Germany*, *Spaine*, *Flanders*, *England* muſt move with invincible ſprings, or elſe they loſe their weight as they are diſcoverd: whereunto a little of *Spaines* humour of diſſembling is abſolutely neceſſary to the open Frenchmans intereſt.

1. In a general peace to ſettle his Councels and people, his Countries waſted with conſtant warrs: to ſecure his Plantations, and furniſh his Navy, that great ſecurity of his Revenue and Treaſure. *Spain.*

2. Securing the Empire and *Italy*, his great confidence, eſpecially from the French: for the Frenchmans buſineſſe is to keep thoſe two places o pe nthe Spaniards to keep them ſhu.

3. Looking to the Pope and his election, in bearing up the reputation of a zealous Champion of the Catholique faith, as if upon the ſupport of his Monarch depended the ſupport of the Church: by this pretence of Religion, 1. He may keep out any Prince from any conſiderable power in the Catholique Dominions, he may ſollicit the Pope to put the Catholique King upon his exerciſing ſeverity upon their Proteſtant ſubjects; and underhand aſſiſt the Proteſtant Subjects againſt thoſe Kings, who are to be traduced as favourers of Hereticks, if they perſecute not the Proteſtants, and to be ſuggeſted perſecutors if they doe: to maintain a ſeminary of Catholiques in thoſe Countries where the Proteſtant Religion prevailes, who ſhall ſtudy Divinity, but practice policy to promote

mote *Spaines* Catholique Monarchy, under the pretence of propagating *Romes* Catholique Religion, to keep up animoſities between the Catholique and reformed *Switz*, who are now ſo cloſely leagued to *France*, to endeavour a diviſion in the *Low countries*, by a long truce and peace.

4. In retaining the ableſt Jeſuits, Monks, and Friars in all Countries, with other the moſt uſefull pentioners and Intelligencers.

5. In interpoſing in the moſt conſiderable treaties, as Judge or umpire, and diſpoſing, the ſeveral parties to agreement in waies moſt agreeable to his intereſt.

6. A truce with *Portugal* which he may *corrupt* ſooner then *conquer*, and *buy* at a cheaper rate then he can *win*.

7. A watchfull eye over the French, eſpecially in *Italy* and in *Poland*, which may be the French his fetch about into the Monarchy of *Spaine* upon the death of this Prince, who either hath none or very uncertain iſſue, and to that purpoſe competent forces in *Naples*, *Millan*, and his *Mediterarean* Provinces, eſpecially *Navarre*, together with his old reputation for zeale and power are neceſſary, together with a core of the fort *Fuentes*, and other paſſages from one part of the divided Monarchy into another, to which I may adde a care to exchange his Militia, and that no garriſons be kept by their own Natives, but they of *Millain*, may be in *Spaine*, and they of *Spaine* in *Milan*, and to impoveriſh the Natives, who may once in an age be coaxed with a few unexpected acts of grace.

8. Out-

8. Outbidding the French in the Switz mar-ket.

9. A League with the Pope, the Princes of *Italy*, the Emperour of *Germany*, the *Pole* in be-halfe of the Church, the onely intereſt that up-holds that Monarchy, and will bear up on that ſide.

Theſe maxims obſerved, will abate the ſwel-ling of *France*, rayſe the low condition of *Spaine*, and ſecure the other Chriſtian Princes, with ſuch a counterpoiſe of affairs as may pre-ſerve their preſent intereſt.

4. The Pope and the *Italian* Princes intereſt lieth, 1. In privacy and peace among themſelves, 2. Becauſe it is the firmeſt friend the Church hath, 3. Becauſe it may be a bridle to reſtraine *France*, a conſideration worthy all their regards, eſpecially the Dukes of *Savoy*; to whom I may adde, the Switz, and the united Provinces, who are to take heed of *France*, though they cannot comply with *Spaine*, and to ſecure the Naviga-tion. *The Pope.*

5. The intereſt of *Germany*, *Poland*, *Denmarke*, and *Sweden*, is ſo to check the growing power of *Spaine*, as not to be ſurprized by a greater of *France*, to attend the Diets, and to have a firm correſpondence among themſelves to beare up againſt the Catholique league.

II. But now cannot all theſe particular in-tereſts be reconciled into one communion a-gainſt the publique enemy: may not *England* ſecure her trade abroad, by a ſtrong Navy, and her peace at home by ſending an army againſt him, being ſafe from all neighbours, who are

engaged

engaged in that common quarrel: is there any thing in the *French* high way to an univerſall Monarchy, but the uſurping Infidell? what weakneth the Papal and Auſtrian intereſt, but the Turkiſh power? what checketh the French, the Flemiſh and the Britiſh trade, but that great Pyrate? what impeacheth the Catholique attempts upon *Portugall*, but thoſe of the Turks upon *Germany*? why droopeth the Patriarchal power at *Rome*, but that the Catholique aſſiſtants are diverted to *Hungary*, and there maintain their own Thrones, while they ſhould uphold their fathers Chaire, as more concerned for their own Crowns then for his Mitre: would not a warre with the Turk ſpend the ill humors of *England* and *Poland*, ſecure the *Dane*, exerciſe the *Swede*, give a truce to *Portugal*, give a reſpit to *Spaine*, open fair opportunities to *France*, ſettle the freedom of the Empire, and in a word ſatisfie the ambition of Chriſtendome: which ſtrugled hitherto within he narrow bounds of *Europe*, but now hath its way open to *Aſia*, *Affrica*, and *America*.

Ch. 3. How the Chriſtian Princes may ballance the Turke in power, and how when they have ballanced him, they may diſpoſe of their forces againſt him, and how many waies they may Attaque him.

1. The Turk is not ſo ſtrong as he is vogued, no more then the Lyon is ſo fierce as he is painted. His Forces are many, but they are diſorderly: his Territories large, but ſcattered: his government ſetled, but violent: his people multitudes, but weary of him: his Janizaries ſtrong, but

but mutinous: his Councels ſteady, but corruptible, yet if he were never ſo puiſſant, they that are for us, are more then they that are againſt us: as will appear from reaſon and experience.

1. Our *Sicuation* is compleat for mutual aſſiſtance. The Turks territories are ſo ſcattered, that they offer great choice of the Scenes of Warre, and promiſe ſlow ſuccours unto thoſe parts that ſhall be attempted. 2. Our method and ediſcipline is better, and our skill in ware more improved. 3. Their treaſure no doubt is great, yet it is uncertain, for their treaſure is in their Subjects eſtates, and their eſtates at the mercy of every invader. Beſides that, their treaſure muſt be conveyed by Sea, and the Sea is at our mercy. On the contrary, our treaſure groweth, our people are willing, eleven millions may be ſpared for that ſervice the firſt enterprize, and then the warre will pay it ſelf.

2. Our men are many, 30000. Horſe and Foot from *England*, 30000. Horſe and Foot from *France*, as many from *Spaine* and its Territories, 50000. men from *Germany* and the *Provinces*, 24000. men from the Northern Kingdomes, 18000. from *Italy*, and the Iſles adjacent. Beſides the forces already raiſed: no new thing this, for in the firſt voyage to the Holy warre, there were 300000. men under *Godfrey* of *Jeruſalem*. In the ſecond under *Monſieur Hugh* of *France* 250000. In the third no leſſe; under *Conrade* the Emperour. At the fourth ſetting forth an 150000. under *Frederick Barboraſſa* the then Emperour. 220000. under *Richard* of *Cornwall*, and *Philip* of *France*:) and the world

is

is more populous now. Besides, we can set out 180. Galleons, Galleasses, and Gallies, 30 from *England*, saith one, 30. from *Holland*, 20. from *Spaine*, 40. from the Pope, the *Italian* Princes, States, and the free towns, 20. from *France*, 30 from the *Baltick* sea and the Sound. This may be constantly maintained from Christendom, to the expence of 500000. men to the Turk, for Sea and Land and Garrisons. And we know that where the Grand Seigniors horse treadeth as grasse so men grow not: but as our men are numerous, they are serviceable and valiant, not a heap of Barbarians, but an Army of knowing and resolved men that understand Fortification, Navigation, and all other mysteries of warre. Its true there may be 2 or 300000 Turks in the field, yet not a fourth part of them are armed, the rest follow the fate of the Conquerours, and fill ditches, and choak death. There is not such a spring and seminary of brave military men in the world as in *Europe*.

5. For Confederates, we know the whole world is jealous of the Turk, the Chrim Tartar is in competition with him about their borders; *Prester John* is resolved against him; once in 30. years comes a Caliph in *Egypt* that casteth envious looks upon him and the Christian world is threatned by him. Many of his Sultans wish him farre off, (*Turkie* being a marsh that when pressed down in one end riseth in the other,) and although he may provide against some of these inconveniences for the present by cunning negotiation, or prudentiall settlements, yet they may break out hereafter upon

pon his many engagements into all Acci-ents. However this is certain, while neceſſity agues us, the truth is much deſtitute of aſſured nd confident confederates: ſo that we may ſay o the Turk now, as a Councellor of State did o the Spaniard ſome years agoe, *Sir, we will ell you thus much for your comfort, you have but two nemies, whereof the one is all the world, the other is our own Miniſters.*

2. We have the advantage on our ſide in the ve particulars of warre, beſides that of a juſt auſe, the recovery of our right, and the ſecu-ing of our Religion and Government, and a oſt gracious God: and ſo reaſon encourageth . We have likewiſe experience on our ſide: or 1097. *July* 1. in the vale of *Drogordan*, *So-man* with all his might fel upon the Chriſtians hree to one, and reſolution it ſelf may be preſ-ed to death under the weight of a multitude: he Sun ſcorching the Northern men, while the Turk had bodies of proof againſt it, with all he diſadvantages imaginable; yet the Turk as utterly overthrown, and the Chriſtians be-ame twice victors, 1. Over their enemies. 2. O-er all the diſadvantages that befriended that nemy: from this battel the Chriſtians waded hrough all difficulties and taking *Iconium*, *Hi-aclea* and *Antioch* it ſelf, after a long ſiege, *June* the 28, 1098. they fought *Corbaran* and his *Perſian* Army, and layd an 100000. of them ead upon the place. And in *December* follow-ng under great extremities, which rather dou-led then abated their valours, took *Jeruſalem*, nd ſlew 30000.

Auſtuſt 12. following an innumerable ompany of Turks and Saracens under *Amira Vſu* their General encounter the Chriſtians at *Askelon*, but God (ſaith my author) ſent ſuch a qualm of cowardlineſs over the hearts of theſe Infidels that an 100000. of them were quickly ſlain, ſo that it was rather an execution then a fight: a while after the Turks aſſaulted the Chriſtians at *Meander*, where the Chriſtians paſſing the River ſtrangly ſo affrighted 530000. of them that they offered their throats to the Chriſtians ſwords, and were killed in ſuch number that whole piles of dead bones remained there for monuments many years after. *Nov.* 25. 1176. king *Baldwin*, with ſome 400 Horſe and 1100 Foot before *Aſhelon* overthrew 26000. of great *Saladins* forces, as afterward at *Troboll* he vanquiſhed 20000. with 700. whom *Frederic Borboroſu* ſeconded and overcame *Saladine* in four great battels, where *Richard* of *Conwall* yet outdid him neer *Bethem*, where were ſlain more men of *Saladines* then in any battel for forty years before: after whoſe ſucceſſe the Emperour *Frederick* recovered all *Paleſtine* without any expence of blood or time. Theſe things have been, and no leſſe may be done ſtill, for afterwards *Philes* with 5000. overthrew 52020. Turks, *An.* 1422. *Amarath* maketh an inrode into *Hungary*, beſiegeth *Belgrade* in vain, leaving 80000. men before it, and repenting heartily that ever he came ther went next year into *Tranſilvania*, where in a pitcht battel with *Hunniades*, he left behind him 20000. men, there being no more dead of *Hunniades* ſide then 3000. as a while after he did

510000.

510000. In the next great battel of *Caſtow*, fought between *Amarath* and *Hunniades* three daies together, there were 40000. Turk, ſlain for 17000. Chriſtians; not to ſpeak of *Scanderbeg's* miracles, and *Tamerlains* wonders, *Hunniades* himſelf overthrew by Sea & Land 600000 Turks. The *Venetians* won of the Turk 36. battels at ſea, *Solyman* the great 1530. came as farre as *Vienna*, beſieged it three quarters of a year, loſt 80000. men before it, and gave it over for impregnable. *Charles* the Emperour calls a Diet, reſolves upon an aray of 84000. men, calleth his old Captains out of *Italy*, ſends to his Admiral *Deaurez* to rig his ſhips, and invade *Greece*, meets *Solyman* at *Gunza*, and there put 26000. of his ſouldiers to the ſword, after *Solyman* had thirteen times aſſaulted *Gunza*, but in vain; diſcomfiteth 15000. Turks that were ſent to ſpoyl *Auſtria*, ranſacks the Turkiſh fleet, takes his Port towns, and returns with glory into *Italy*: and thence a while after invades *Affrica* with ſucceſſe, makes a league with the Biſhop of *Rome* and the *Venetians*, to ſend forth 200. Gallies againſt the common enemy, to whom the *French* added 26. to ſcoure the *Mediterranean* ſeas, who forc't great *Solyman* to peace: which when he afterward broke by a war upon *Hungary*, he was then met with by the united forces of the Emperour and the Princes, and beaten home to *Conſtantinople*. The *Turk* makes war upon the *Venetians*, they agree with *Spaine*, the Pope and the Princes of *Italy* to joyn againſt this common enemy, and that *Spaine* ſhould be at halfe the charge, the other half being undertaken by the

other three parties, and thus purſue the great adverſary to his own Port, and cudgel him to overtures of peace. Beſides that, they engaged the *Perſian* King to attaque him, and upon his ſecond overthrow him at the famous *Lepanto*, and buried there 36000. of his Royal Navy, bringing the great Sultan upon his knees for peace. 1593. the Turk reinforceth his former attempts, the Emperour advertiſed the Chriſtian Princes of it, they appear in the field 163000. ſtrong, and defeat the invader at *Alba regalis*, where he buried 36000 men in three weeks time, purſuing their victory under the conduct of Count *Serini* to the great Port it ſelf: 1604. their unwearied enmity recruting its ſelf under *Mahomet* the third, again threatned Chriſtendome after various ſucceſſes in *Tranſilvania*, at laſt quite ſuppreſſed, and notwithſtanding its Tartarian aſſiſtances awed into a ten years peace, for the preſent, and put to an utter incapacity to incommodate the Chriſtians to this day, buting only ſome little enterprizes at ſea, where the little Commonwealth of *Venice* outdared them. Thus have we common reaſon, and many years experience encouraging the Chriſtian Princes to encounter this daring Infidel, whom they have hitherto outgone in power and ſucceſſe.

III. But the queſtion is, how, conſidering the fears and jealouſies, the various intereſts and deſigns of Chriſtian Potentates, they may if reſolved on an holy warre, diſpoſe their forces to each other ſatisfaction and content; to which the anſwer is obvious: 1. It is not above threeſcore years ago ſince an univerſal conqueſt, being deſigned by the Infidel upon all believers, the Chriſtian Princes awake

waked and resolved upon a Catholique confederacy without any scruples, agreeing that Saxony should send 2600, *Francovia* and *Swevia* 5000, *Tyroll* 5000, *Bavaria* 3000, *Bohemia* 12000, *Moravia* 3000, *Austria* 8000, *Hungary* 6000, *Spaine* 14000, *Rome* 10000, *Tuscany* 4000, *Ferara* 1500, *Montua* 1000, *Frnace* 16000, *Venice* 5000, *England* 7000, *Poland* 12000. to *Vienna* where the general rendezvouz was appointed, the General pitched upon is Archduke *Sigismund*, the Lieut. General Count *Mansfield*.

2. But if you will say that the state of Christendome must needs be altered much under threescore years revolution, it will be naturally replied, that though there have been some private alterations in some particular interests, yet the main interest is the same, *viz.* the ballance of *France* and *Spaine*. And if you retort, that it was not then, nor may it be now safe to admit any Auxiliaries, especially those of *France* into the Empire, the current maxime being, that a State had better be conquered with its own people, than conquer with an Army of others, who may first overthrow their foes, and then their friends. Your satisfaction is at hand, for there is no danger in Auxiliaries, if 1. they have no Castles or Garrisons in their hands. 2. If they are no more then the Natives may muster. 3. If they engage a Common Enemy. 4. If they are so mixed as the united forces of Christendome are supported. 5. If they are commanded by the natives of that Country which they assist: or at least by persons whose chief dependance is on that power which they have: but more particularly, are the Protestants in *Germany* affraid of Papists? they may be ballanced with Pro-

teſtants. Is the Emperour afraid of the French? they may be counterpoiſed by the Spaniards and Italians, or to ſalve all the *Germans*, the *Hungarians*, the *Italians*, the *Spaniards*, the *Engliſh* may meet the terrour of *Gorony* in *Auſtria*, while the *French*, the *Dutch*, the *Venetians*, the *Muſcovite*, the *Polomian*, the *Dane* and *Swede*, ſurprize him in his own Country, and make a diverſion that may relieve the Chriſtian, if not utterly overthrow the Infidel.

IV. And by this time I ſuppoſe the Princes agreed, the armies raiſed, and a reſolution taken up by all the States to ſcour off the ruſt from their ancient renown in the Holy war (whither *Germany* ſent three Emperours with 450000. men, *France* four Kings with their Armies, *England* one King and three Kings ſons, with 86000. men, *Italy* four Generals with four puiſſant armies, *Spaine* two Kings, and 52000. *Poland* one King with 13000. men, *Norway* a Fleet of 47. brave ſhips, and *Denmark* the like. (Anceſtors glory is a great motive to brave enterprizes, for late poſterity) & the noble Gentlemen, of all Nations, that bear their anceſtors ſervice in their Armes, thronging to make good their honour; but which way may the Turk be invaded? We muſt know our ground before we bowle right.

1. In general a Chriſtian army muſt be led againſt the Turk not through wide plains, but narrow paſſages, where the Mahumetan multitudes will be uſeleſſe againſt their enemies, and burthenſome to themſelves; and ſome ſuch unuſual ſtratagem may be practiſed as may amuſe and diſorder the Barbarian, who hath but one way to the wood, and

that

that where his people are moſt diſcontent and ready, as they are indeed every where, to entertain aid, & ſuccour any by whom they may have certain hope to wind their necks out of the yoak of that Intollerable ſervitude which they now ſuffer:

2. More particularly to paſſe by the Sea-ports Leading into *Aſia* out of the *North*, we may goe by *Belgrade* into *Thrace* on the one hand: or to *Macedonia* on the other, thence through the Plains of *Godomire* and the upper River of *Moravia* to Nilus and the River adjacent: thence over the vaſt Mountains *Cunoronia* to *Sorphea* within twenty miles of *Rhodop* and the plaine of *Philipi*: this was the Romans way to *Aſia*, this was *Godfrey* of *Bulloigns*, way to the Land of *Promiſe*, then through a plaine by the River *Hebers* banks to Adrianople the Grand Saignior Seat in *Europe*, thence to the *Helliſpont*, and thence to *Conſtantinople*, Another way from *Belgrade* there is through *Moravia Alba regalis Myha* and *Caſtovia* that fatall velley for the *French* the *Deſpol* and *Hunniades* his overthrow thence the way of *Cuzan* and *Cliſtura* between the two Rivers *Labus* and *Snithniza* and the great hills of *Piſtur*, within two dayes Journey of which place is *Scopia* the Chief City of the *Dardani*, a moſt convenient place for a Rendezvouz: From this place there is an excellent narrow way through the valley of *Gegligore*, and over the hills adjacent to *Philipolis* aforeſaid. There is another way from *Pononia* to *Myſa* by *Saſton*, *Vugbe*, and Mount *Larzus* there are other waies through *Hungary*, *Tranſilvania*, and other places: but there were two waies, eſpecially that the Roman armies paſſed through into Thrace, the one called the Egnution way through

the

the Pharſalian plains, levaing the River *Drina* on the left hand, and the Theſſalian hills on the right, leading to the plains of *Macedon*: the other called the the *Candarian* way from *Apollonia* to the lake of *Valonu*, and ſo the river *Phidoris* by the Sea ſide from the *Conuthian Iſthmus*, all along the *Ægean* ſea to *Theſſalonica*, and over Mount *Athos* to the ſhores of *Heber*, whence they may go either on the right hsnd towards *Adrianople*, or on the left over the bridge of *Ægina* by *Callipolis*, to the very mouth of the *Dardanelles*: and all theſe waies, 1. Narrow and commodious, againſt the Turks multitudes. 2. Fertile, and affording abundance of proviſion. 3. Chriſtian, where the people are ready to riſe, wanting nothing but the covert and protection of an European army, towards their reſcue from the Grecian tyranny. In a word, 30000 reſolved men, attended with competent ſupplies and recruits, entring either *Slavonia*, *Hungaria*, *Tranſilvania*, or *Epirus*, a ſtout Navy in the *Dardanelles*, and an inrode into *Thrace*, *Greece*, or ſome other diſtant, but conſiderable Province, ſetleth Chriſtendom, and it may be, according to ſome mens conjectures at this time converteth the world.

Ch 4. Some particular advantages in reference to a Turk, the neglect whereof hath made us hitherto ſo unſuccesfull.

Chriſtendome may be uow preſumed advanced to her great enemies terrour, onely ſhe watcheth her ſpeciall advantages againſt that potent adverſary, the principall whereof are theſe:

1. He that would deal with the Muſulmans powers ſucceſſefully muſt protract and delay the war as long as may be, waving all occaſions of Engage-

ment

ment and strengthening the passages as he goes, whereby. 1. The *Turk* may be tired as not able to entertain and pay his grosse multitude long. 2. His men may be debauched with the Customes of other Countries: 3. And all his methods, designes, and Stratagems by some Considarable times observation Effectually discovered: the observation of this rule in the Holy war had put a period to the persons and things we treate of a hundred of years before we were born.

2. A Turkish war is then managed with success when that enemy is attacqued in several parts of his scattered Dominions, and distracted between the fear of his open enemies, & the treachery of his private ones; nor he knows not which province he may keep sure, which he can most securely loose.

3. A Christian army should be as exact, as sober, as temperate, and as just as the Christian rule is: Intemperance, perjury, and Superstition were the bane of the holy warre:

4. A Good understanding with the Greeke Church upon *Nilus* his moderate terms would be a great advantage to this design, as the misunderstanding betweene us upon civill and religious accounts was the great disadvantage of our former.

Chap.

CHAP. 15.

An exact Chronology of the Several Successes of the Christians against the Turks.

Diogenes the Emperour Husband of *Eudoria*, Discomfiteth the Turks, and taketh from them much booty and prisoners. 1040.

40000 Turks slaine by the Christians under the command of *Godfrey* of *Bulloigne* and other Christian Princes. 1097.

The Cities of *Antioch* and *Heraclea* wan by the Christians, *Idem*

Jerusalem taken by the Christians, with a very great slaughter of the *Sarazins*, and soon after a hundred thousand Turks slain in one battell. 1099

Ptolomais won from the Turks, and many thousand *Sarazins* slain by Prince *Tancred*. 1101

Dominicus Michael Duke of *Venice* obtaineth a notable victory over the Turks at *Joppa*. 1124

The Christians take the Cittie of Tyre from the Turks. *Idem*

Conrade the Emperour giveth the Turks so great an overthrow that the Vallies where it was fought ran with blood, and the fields covered with the bodies of the dead. 1146

Noradin the Turk Discomfited with a great slaughter by *Gilbert Lary* Master of the Templers. 1166

Saladin Sultan of Egypt having in his Army above 16 thousand horsemen overthrown by *Baldwin* King of *Jerusalem* with four hundred horse.

horſemen and ſome few footmen. 1177

Frederick the Emperour ſetteth forward towards the holy Land, overthroweth the Turks in *Lycaonia*, taketh the Citie of *Iconium* and giveth the ſpoile thereof to his ſouldiers. 1190

Frederick his Sonne overthroweth *Saladine*, and beſiegeth *Ptolomais*. *Idem*

Richard the firſt of *England*, and *Phillip* King of *France* Set forwards for the holy Land. *Idem*

Ptolomais won from the Turks chiefly by the valour of King *Richard*. 1191

A great victory obtained by King *Richard* and the Chriſtians, wherein were ſlain more *Turks* and *Sarazins* then in any one battell within the memory of man before. *Idem*

Many thouſand *Turks* ſlaine at *Joppa* by the Chriſtians. 1197

Theodorus Laſconis the Greek Emperour overthroweth the *Turks* and killeth *Jathalines* the *Sultan* in ſingle battell. 1208

Damiata in Egypt taken by the Chriſtians, whereof Seventy thouſand perſons in the City, at the Chriſtians entrance were found but three thouſand. 1221

King *Lewis* of *France* ſetteth forward towards the holy Land, giveth the *Sarazins* many overthrows, and again taketh the City of *Damiata* in Egypt. 1249

Edward the firſt of *England* arriveth at *Ptolomais*, and performeth many notable exploits againſt the *Turks*. 1271

The Knights Hoſpitallers takes the Iſland of *Rhodes* from the *Turks*. 1308

The Citty of *Nice* with divers other Caſtles recovered

vered from the *Turks*, and many overthrows, given them by the Christians. 1328

Boga taken by the Christians, and all the *Turks* therein put to death. 1365

The Castle of *Sarkiue*, with the City joyning unto it, taken by the Christians and rased. 1389

A great bloudy battel fought betwixt *Tamerlaine* the great and *Bajazet* Emperour of the *Turks*, wherein *Bajazet* was taken, put up like a beast in an iron Cage, against whose Barrs he beat out his Braines. 1397

Amurath the Second besieging *Belgrade* in *Hungaria* is repulsed by the Christians with the losse of Fifteene thousand men. 1438

John Huniades Vaivod of *Transilvania* obtained a notable victory over the *Turks*. 1440

The same *Huniades* again overthroweth the *Turks*, killeth *Mesites* their General, and 20000 of their Souldiers. 1441

Another great victory obtained by *Huniades* in *Transylvania* wherein the *Turks* lost above halfe their vast Army, besides above 5000 taken prisoners. 1443

Huniades with 10000 men assaulteth by night the Campe of the *Turks*, Slayeth 30000 of them, and taketh 4000 prisoners. *Idem*

Huniades joyned battel with the *Bassa Corambey*, overthroweth his Army, and taketh him prisoner. 1444

George Castriot, Nicknamed *Scanderbeg*, Prince of *Epirus*, obtained the City of *Croia* by Policy, and taketh *Petrellay*, *Petra Alba*, and *Stellusa* by force. *Idem*

Scanderbeg spoyleth *Macedonia*, *Alis Bassa* sent against

againſt him, whom he overthroweth, ſlayeth 22000. and taketh 2000 priſoners. 1445

Feriſes ſent by *Amurath* into *Epirus* againſt *Scanderbeg* is by him overthrown, as alſo 5000 ſlain of the Army of *Muſtapha*. 1446

Scanderbeg again overthroweth *Muſtapha*, Slayeth 10000 of his men, & taketh him priſoner. 1448

Maketh a notable aſſault upon the army of *Amurath* before the Seige of *Croia*. 1450

Four Chriſtian ſhips fight with the *Turks* whoſe fleet, beat them and kill 1000 of their men. 1453

Huniades cauſeth the *Turks* to Fire their fleet, and after maketh *Mahomet* the great to flee from the ſiege of *Belgrade* having loſt thereat 40000 Souldiers. 1456

Scanderbeg obtained a notable victory againſt the *Turks*, killeth *Debreas* their General, and ſlayeth 4120 of them. 1455

Afterwards overthroweth all their force killing 11000 of them. *Idem*

Scanderbeg again overthroweth the *Turks*, ſlayeth 30000 of them and taketh their General *Ameſa* priſoner. 1460

Encountereth with *Seremet Baſſa* neare to the City *Ocrida*, vanquiſheth him, and Slayeth of the *Turks* Ten thouſand. 1463

Vanquiſheth *Balbanus* the *Turkes* General with great loſſe in three Severall Battels. 1464

Balbanus and *Jacuppe* overthrown by *Scanderbeg* in two ſeveral battels with the loſſe of 24000 men and 6000 taken priſoners. *Idem*

Mathias King of *Hungaria* taketh the Kingdome of *Boſna* from the *Turks*, and forced *Mahomet* to a Diſhonourable flight. 1469

Raiſeth

Raiſed the *Turks* from the Seige of *Scodra* wherein they loſt 14000 men. 1475

The *Turks* beaten off from the Seige of *Rhodes* with the loſſe of above 3000 men. 1480

The *Rhodes* valiantly defended by the Chriſtians againſt the Seige of the *Turks* for ſix months together, wherein *Solyman* loſt, beſides them that were ſlaine, thirty thouſand, that died of the Flix. 1522

Solyman beſeigeth the City of *Vienna*, is oftentimes repulſed, and at laſt forced to forſake it, having loſt thereat eighty thouſand men. 1529

8000 *Turks* invading *Auſtria*, are ſlain by the *Count Palatine*. 1532

Tunis taken by the Chriſtians by meanes of 6000 naked priſoners in the Caſtle. 1535

The *Turks* with a great fleet invade the Iſle of *Malta* where after many repulſes they were at laſt driven out by valour of *Valetta* the great Maſter, with the loſs of twenty four thouſand *Turks*. 1565

The *Turks* divers times valiantly reſiſted at the Iſle of *Cyprus*, and afterwards driven out of *Creet* with the loſſe of two thouſand men 1570

The *Turks* great Navy overthrown by the Confederate Chriſtians at the battel of *Lepanto*, two and thirty thouſand ſlain and periſhed in the waters, 161 Galleys taken, 60 Galliats, and other ſmall veſſels, and about 40 Gallies ſunk and burnt 1571

Cutaro being beſieged by the *Turks*, is relieved by *Superantius*, who taketh another great fort from them, putting all the Turks therein to the ſword *idem*

The Turks receive ſeverall overthrows by *John Vay-*

Vaynod of *Valachia* and *Moldavia* 1574
A great battel betwixt the Turks and the Chriſtians neer *Siſeg* in *Croatia*, wherein 4000. Chriſtians ſlew 18000 Turks 1593
Several Caſtles and ſtrong holds taken from the Turks by Count *Serini* *idem*
The Chriſtians obtain a memorable victory over the *Turks* before *Strigonium*. 1595
Strigonium and *Vicegrad* taken by the Chriſtians with Several other victories obtained by them againſt the *Turks*. *Idem*
Vacia and *Hatwan* two Cities in *Hungaria* beſieged and taken by the Chriſtians. 1596
The battell of *Kareſta* betwixt the Chriſtians and *Turks* wherein were ſlain of the *Turks* 60000 1597
The ſtrong place of *Kab* Surprized by the Chriſtians with a few men and about Six thouſand *Turks* ſlaine. 1598
The *Turks* receive a notable overthrow upon the River of *Danubius*, which made them for fear to forſake the City at *Buda* and flie into the Caſtle. 1599
Alba Regalis taken by the Chriſtians and the *Baſſa* of *Buda* ſlain, with Six thouſand men 1601
2000 *Turks* defeated and ſlain by *Collonitz*. 1602
A great victory obtained by the Chriſtians thorough the information of a Turkiſh Captaine, and the Suburbs of *Alba Regalis* ſacked and burnt. 1603
2000 *Turks* ſlain in an ambuſh by *Colinitz*. *Idem*
Hatwan a very conſiderable place taken twice in ſhort time by the Chriſtians with very conſiderable loſſe to the *Turks*. *Idem*
The *Vaynod* of *Valachia* giveth the *Turks* a great overthrow

overthrow and taketh many prisoners. 1604

The Christians of *Posth* give the *Turks* of *Buda* a great overthrow. *Idem*

The Christians obtain a great victory over the *Turks* at Presburgh. 1605

A great victory obtained by the Imperials over the *Turks*, wherein was slaine above a thousand of them. *Idem*

The *Turks* Surprised at *Carmera*, and a great many of them there slaine. 1606

A great victory obtained by the *Florentines* over the Turkish *Gallies*. 1610

The Knights of *Malta* obtain a great victory over the *Turks* at *Corinth*. 1611

The Duke of *Transylvania* obtaineth a great victory over the *Turks* at *Agliman* and ruinated he City. 1613

Prince *Coreski* defeats the *Turks* in *Vasseloy*. 1615

The Christians under the two Princes *Tschenich* and *Coreski* overthrew the *Turks* at *Cochine*, with the slaughter of above twelve thousand of them, besides the wounded and prisoners. 1616

The *Florentines* under the conduct of the great Duke of *Tuscany* named *Cosmo*, obtain a notable victory over the Turkish *Gallies*, where besides the slaine they took 240 *Turks*, and freed 430 Christians, gained prizes worth 200000 Crowns. *Idem*

The *Turks* make a great Irruption into *Poland*, where by the Sword, Famine, sickness and cold, they lost above eighty thousand men, and above an hundred thousand horses. 1621

Captain *Bundock* Captain of an English ship called the Safe *Bonaventure*, taketh a rich prize from the *Turks* at Sea. 1628

two

Two Merchants ſhips of England maintained a fight with thirty ſaile of Turkiſh *Gallies*, wherein was ſlain a thouſand ſeven hundred *Turks*, and their Admiral *Galley* with many others made unſerviceable. 1633

Ragotzi Prince of *Tranſylvania* challenges the *Baſſa* of *Buda*, gives him a great overthrow, having the purſuit of him thirty miles, an innumerable company of *Turks* ſlain. 1658

Being aſſiſted by the *Walachians* and *Moldavians* he gives the *Turks* another great overthrow. *Idem*

Obtaineth another great victory over the *Turks*, wherein he ſlew 6000 of them, but received a wound whereof he died. 1660

The *Vaynod* of *Walachia* giveth the *Turks* a great overthrow. *Idem*

De Souches General of the *German* artillery, enters the Turkiſh territories in *Hungary*, takes divers ſtrong places, and obtaineth a great victory over the *Turks*. 1661

The two *Serini's* make an inroad into T[illegible] ſack and burn many tents, and take a great booty. *Idem*

Count Serini giveth the *Turks* an overthrow betwixt *Cuniga* and *Sigeth*, wherein beſides the ſlain were divers perſons of quality taken. 1662

Count Serini recovers the Caſtle *Zephan*, put 200 *Turks* to the Sword, and takes 300 priſoners afterwards with 4000 men fell on 12000 *Turks* of whom he Slew 3000. 1663

Serini give the *Turks* a great defeat by Ambuſcado wherein many thouſands of them are ſlain. *Idem*

The *Count Serini* and *Budiani* make incurſions into the *Turks* Dominions wherein they doe them great Damage. *Idem*

Petar

Peter Serini with 4000 men falleth upon the *Turks* killeth above 1000 of them, and taketh 150 prisoners. *Idem*

Peter Serini giveth the *Turks* a great overthrow, taketh 35 Ensignes the same of a *Bassa*, and several other prisoners. *Idem*

Count Serini gives the *Turks* and *Tartars* a great overthrow near *Scotorito*, about 2000 kill'd and 1000 horse taken. *Idem*

The Christians at *Comorra* defeat the *Turks* and take a booty valued at 20000 Rix dollers. *Idem*

Count Serini obtaines many notable victories over the *Turks*, amongst others takes Five-kirk, a very considerable place by storm, and puts all therein to Death. *Idem*

This Illustrious person *Count Serini* hath already attained to so high a pitch of fame, that his Name is renowned throughout all Christendome, and his hopes will prove as great a maul and terrour to the *Turks* as either *Tamerlane* the *Great*, or that valiant Prince the renowned *Scanderbeg*.

FINIS.